Axiomatic Set Theory P.D.Welch.

August 16, 2020

Contents

Page

1	Axioms and Formal Systems		1
	1.1	INTRODUCTION	1
	1.2	Preliminaries: axioms and formal systems.	3
		1.2.1 The formal language of ZF set theory; terms	4
		1.2.2 The Zermelo-Fraenkel Axioms	7
	1.3	Transfinite Recursion	9
	1.4	Relativisation of terms and formulae	11
2	Initial segments of the Universe		17
	2.1	Singular ordinals: cofinality	17
		2.1.1 COFINALITY	17
		2.1.2 Normal Functions and closed and unbounded classes	19
		2.1.3 STATIONARY SETS	22
	2.2	Some further cardinal arithmetic	24
	2.3	Transitive Models	25
	2.4	The H_{κ} sets	27
		2.4.1 H_{ω} - the hereditarily finite sets	28
		2.4.2 H_{ω_1} - the hereditarily countable sets	29
	2.5	The Montague-Levy Reflection theorem	30
		2.5.1 Absoluteness	30
		2.5.2 Reflection Theorems	32
	2.6	INACCESSIBLE CARDINALS	34
		2.6.1 INACCESSIBLE CARDINALS	35
		2.6.2 A MENAGERIE OF OTHER LARGE CARDINALS	36
3	Formalising semantics within ZF		39
	3.1	Definite terms and formulae	39
		3.1.1 The non-finite axiomatisability of ZF	44
	3.2	Formalising syntax	45
	3.3	Formalising the satisfaction relation	46
	3.4	Formalising definability: the function Def.	47
	3.5	More on correctness and consistency	48

	3.5.1 Incompleteness and Consistency Arguments	50
4 Тне	Constructible Hierarchy	53
4.1	The L_{α} -hierarchy	53
4.2	The Axiom of Choice in L	56
4.3	The Axiom of Constructibility	57
4.4	The Generalised Continuum Hypothesis in <i>L</i> .	58
4.5	Ordinal Definable sets and HOD	60
4.6	Criteria for Inner Models	63
	4.6.1 Further examples of inner models	64
4.7	The Suslin Problem	66
Append	71	
A.1	The formal languages - syntax	71
A.2	Semantics	73
A.3	A Generalised Recursion Theorem	75
SYMBOL	80	
INDEX		82

iii

iv

CHAPTER 1

Axioms and Formal Systems

1.1 INTRODUCTION

The great German mathematician DAVID HILBERT (1862-1943) in his address to the second International Congress of Mathematicians in Paris 1900 placed before the audience a list of the 23 mathematical prob-2 lems he considered the most relevant, the most urgent, for the new century to solve. Hilbert had been a 3 defender of Cantor's seminal work on on infinite sets, and listed the Continuum Hypothesis as one of the great unsolved questions of the day. He accordingly placed this question at the head of his list. The hy-5 pothesis is easy to state, and understandable to anyone with the most modest of mathematical education: *if* A *is a subset of the real line continuum* \mathbb{R} *, then there is a bijection of* A *either with* \mathbb{N} *the set of natural* numbers, or with all of \mathbb{R} . Phrased in the terminology that Cantor introduced following his discovery 8 of the uncountability of the reals and his subsequent work on *cardinality* the hypothesis becomes: for q any such A, if A is not countable then it has the cardinality of \mathbb{R} itself. CH thus asserts that there is no 10 cardinality that is intermediate between that of \mathbb{N} and that of \mathbb{R} . If the cardinality of \mathbb{N} is designated 11 ω_0 (or \aleph_0) and that of the first uncountable cardinal as ω_1 (or \aleph_1) then CH is often written as " $2^{\omega_0} = \omega_1$ " 12 (or $2^{\aleph_0} = \aleph_1$) the point being here is that the real continuum can be identified with the class of infinite 13 binary sequences \mathbb{N}_2 and the latter's cardinality is 2^{ω_0} . 14 Sometimes called the Continuum Problem, Cantor wrestled with this question for the rest of his ca-15 reer, without finding a solution. However, in this quest he also founded the subject of Descriptive Set 16 Theory that seeks to prove results about sets of reals, or functions thereon, according to the complexity 17 of their description. Such hierarchical bodies of sets were to become very influential in the Russian school 18 of analysts (Suslin, Lusin, Novikoff) and the French (Lebesgue, Borel, Baire). The notion of a hi-19 erarchy built up by considering complexity of definition of course also invites methods of mathematical 20 logic. Descriptive Set Theory has figured greatly in modern set theory, and there is a substantial body of 21 results on the *definable continuum* where one tries to establish CH type results not for the whole contin-22 uum but just for "definable parts" thereof. Cantor was able to show that *closed* subsets of \mathbb{R} satisfied CH: 23 they were either countable or could be seen to contain a subset which was of cardinality the continuum. 24 This allows one to say that then countable unions of closed sets also satisfied the CH. Cantor hoped to

Inis allows one to say that then countable unions of closed sets also satisfied the CH. Cantor hoped to be able to prove CH for increasingly complicated sets of real numbers, and somehow exhaust all subsets

in this way. The analysts listed above made great strides in this new field and were able to show that any

analytic set satisfied CH. (At the same time they were producing results indicating that such sets were 28 very "regular": they were all Lebesgue measurable, had a categorical property defined by Baire and many 29 other such properties. Borel in particular defined a hierarchy of sets now named after him, which gave 30 very real substance to Cantor's efforts to build up a hiearchy of increasing complexity from simple sets.) 31 However it was clear that although the study of such sets was rewarded with a regular picture of their 32 properties, this was far from proving anything about all sets. We now know that Cantor was trying to 33 prove the impossible: the mathematical tools available to him at his day would later be seen to be for-34 malisable in Zermelo-Fraenkel set theory with the Axiom of Choice, AC (an axiom system abbreviated 35 as ZFC). Within this theory it was shown (by (COHEN (1934-2007)) that CH is strictly unprovable. If he 36 had taken the opposite tack and had thought the CH false, and had attempted to produce a set Aneither 37 of cardinality that of \mathbb{N} nor of \mathbb{R} he would have been equally stuck: by a result of Gödel within ZFC it 38 turns out that \neg CH is strictly unprovable. 39

It is the aim of this course to give a proof of this latter result of Gödel. The method he used was 40 to look at the cumulative hierarchy V (which we may take to be the universe of sets of mathematical 41 discourse) in which all the ZF axioms are seen to be true, and to carve out a special transitive subclass 42 - the class of *constructible sets*, abbreviated by the letter L. This L was a proper transitive class of sets (it 43 contains all ordinals) and it was shown by Gödel (i) That any axiom σ from ZF was seen to hold in L; 44 moreover (ii) Both AC and CH held in L. This establishes the unprovability of \neg CH from the ZF axioms: 45 L is a structure in which any axioms of ZF used in a purported proof of \neg CH were true, and in which 46 CH was true. However a proof of \neg CH from that axiom set would contradict the fact that rules of first 47 order logic are sound, that is truth preserving. 48

In modern terms we should say that Gödel constructed the first *inner model* of set theory: that is, a transitive class W containing all ordinals, and in which each axiom of ZFC can be shown to be true. Such models generalising Gödel's construction are much studied by contemporary set theorists, so we are in fact as interested in the construction as much as (or even more so now) than the actual result.

It is a perhaps a curious fact that such inner models invariably validate the CH but most set theorists do not see that fact alone as giving much evidence for a solution to the problem: the inner model L and those generalising it are built very carefully with much attention to detail as to how sets appear in their construction. Set theorists on the whole tend to feel that there is no reason that these procedures exhaust all the sets of mathematical discourse: we are building a very smooth, detailed object, but why should that imply that V is L? Or indeed any other of the later generations of models generalising it?

However it is one of facts we shall have to show about L that in one sense it is "self-constructing": the 59 construction of L is a mathematical one; it therefore is done within the axiom system of ZF; but (we shall 60 assert) L itself satisfies all such axioms; ergo we may run the construction of the constructible hierarchy 61 within the model L itself (after all it is a universe satisfying all ZF axioms). It will be seen that this process 62 activated in L picks up all of L itself: in short, the statement "V = L" is valid in L. The conclusion to be 63 drawn from this is that from the axioms of ZF we cannot prove that there are sets that lie outside L. It 64 is thus consistent with ZF that V = L is true! If V = L is true, then there are many consequences for 65 mathematics: the study of L is now highly developed and many consequences for analysis, algebra,... have 66 been shown to hold in L whose proof either remains elusive, or else is downright unprovable without 67 assuming some additional axioms. It is a corollary to the consistency of V = L with ZF, that we cannot 68 use this method of constructing an inner model to find one in which \neg CH holds: if it is consistent that 69

V = L then it is consistent that *L* is the only inner model there is, so no construction using the axioms of ZF alone can possibly produce an inner model of \neg CH.

We are thus left still in the state of ignorance that Hilbert protested was not the lot of mathematicians 72 as regards the CH.¹ Cohen's proof that CH is not provable from the ZFC axioms does not proceed by using 73 inner models (we have mentioned reasons why it cannot) but by constructing models of the axioms in 74 a boolean valued logic: statements there do not have straightforward true/false truth values. In Cohen's 75 models, when constructed aright, all axioms of ZF (and sentences provable from them in first order 76 logic) receive the topmost truth value "1", and contradictions $\neg \sigma \land \sigma$, receive the bottom value "0". Cohen 77 constructed such a model in which \neg CH received a "non-o" truth value in the Boolean algebra, value p 78 say. Consequently CH is not provable from ZF, else the Boolean model would have to assign the non-79 zero p to the inconsistent statement CH $\wedge \neg$ CH and such is not possible in these models. This literally 80 taken, says absolutely nothing about sets in the universe V since the model is a sub-universe of V with a 81 non-classical interpretation. It speaks only about what can or cannot be proven in first order logic from 82 the axioms of ZFC.² 83 There are many results in set theory, in particular in axiomatic systems that enhance ZFC with some 84 "strong axiom of infinity" that indicate that the CH is actually false (that $2^{\aleph_0} = \aleph_2$ often occurs in such 85 cases). At present this can only be taken as some kind of quasi-empirical evidence and so is a source of 86 much discussion. 87 Prerequisites: Cohen's proof is beyond the scope of this course, but we shall do Gödel's construction 88

of L in detail. This will involve extending the basic results on ordinal and cardinal numbers and their 89 arithmetic; we shall have recourse to schemes of ordinal and \in -recursion. The reader is assumed familiar 90 with a development of these topics, as well as with the notion and basic properties of transitive sets. 91 Although Gödel gave a presentation of the constructible hierarchy using a functional hierarchy, with 92 almost all logic eliminated, (mainly as a way of presenting his results to "straight" mathematicians) we 93 shall be going the traditional route of defining a "Definability" operator using all the syntactic resources 94 of a formal language \mathcal{L} and the methods of modern logic. Formal derivability $T \vdash \sigma$ will always mean 95 that σ is derivable from the axioms T in one, or any, system of classical first order calculus familiar to 96 the reader. 97

Acknowledgements: these notes are heavily indebted to a number of sources: in particular to RONALD
 B. JENSEN : Modelle der Mengenlehre (Springer Lecture Notes in Maths, vol 37,1967), and his subsequent
 lecture notes.

101

102

1.2 PRELIMINARIES: AXIOMS AND FORMAL SYSTEMS.

We introduce the formal first order language \mathcal{L} , and see how we can use *class terms* expressed in it. We then give a formulation of the Zermelo-Fraenkel axioms themselves.

¹Or any mathematical problem "You can find [the solution to any mathematical problem] by pure reason, for in mathematics there is no ignorabimus" Hilbert, Lecture delivered to the 2nd International Congress of Mathematicians, Paris 1900.

²This is only one way of interpreting Cohen's forcing technique. See Kunen [4] Set Theory: An Introduction to Independence Proofs



Hilbert in 1900

1.2.1 The formal language of ZF set theory; terms

¹⁰⁶ ZF set theory is formulated in a formal first order language of predicate logic with axioms for equality.

¹⁰⁷ The components of that language $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}_{\dot{\in}}$ are:

(i) set variables; $v_0, v_1, \ldots, v_n, \ldots$ (for $n \in \mathbb{N}$)

(ii) two binary predicate symbols: \doteq , \doteq

110 (iii) logical connectives: \lor , \neg

(iv) brackets: (,)

112 (v) an existential quantifier: \exists .

The *formulae* of \mathcal{L} are defined inductively in a way familiar for any first order language. We assume the reader has seen this done for his or herself and do not repeat this here. We assume also that the notion of *free variable* (FVbl(φ)) and *subformula* of a formula φ as inductively defined over the collection of all formulae is also familiar. We shall use the notation $\phi(y/x)$ for the formulae ϕ with the free variable occurrences of the variable x replaced by the variable y. A formula with no free variables is called a *closed* formula or a *sentence*. It is sometimes convenient to augment the language \mathcal{L} with other predicate symbols $\vec{A} = A_0, A_1, \ldots$; if this is done we denote the appropriate language by $\mathcal{L}_{\vec{A}}$.

We use the binary predicate symbol \in as a relation to be interpreted as membership: " $v_0 \in v_1$ " will be interpreted as " v_0 is a member of v_1 " *etc.* We often use other letters also to stand in for variables v_k : typically x, y, z, and recalling the convention from ST: α, β , for ordinals *etc. etc.*³. It is so convenient to adopt these conventions that we do so immediately even when we write out our basic axioms. Note that in our statement of the Extensionality Axiom Ax 1 we also abbreviate " $\neg \exists v_k \neg \psi$ " as usual by " $\forall v_k \psi$ ".

125 Axo (Extensionality)

126

$$\forall x \forall y (\forall z (z \in x \leftrightarrow z \in y) \leftrightarrow x = y)$$

³Formally speaking the symbols $x, y, \alpha, \beta, \ldots$ are not part of \mathcal{L} : they have the status of *metavariables* in the *metalanguage*; the latter is the language we use to *talk about* \mathcal{L} . The metalanguage consists of English with a liberal admixture of such metavariables and other symbols as and when we require them. Some of our metatheoretical arguments require some simple arithmetic, as when we prove something about formulae or terms by induction. These arguments can all be done with *primitive recursive* arithmetic.

This single axiom expresses the fact that identity of sets is based solely on membership questions about the two sets.

We have seen that collections, or "classes" based on unguarded specifications within the language \mathcal{L} can lead to trouble; recall Russell's Paradox: $R =_{df} \{x \mid x \notin x\}$ was a class that could not be considered to be a set. Likewise $V =_{df} \{x \mid x = x\}$ is not a set. Such collections we called "proper classes". It might be thought that this mode of introducing collections or classes is fraught with potential danger, and although we successfully used these ideas in ST perhaps it would be safer to do without them? In fact such methods of specifying collections is so useful that instead of being wary of them, we shall embrace them full heartedly whilst keeping them at a safe distance from our formal language \mathcal{L} .

DEFINITION 1.1 (*i*) A class term is a symbol string of the form $\{x \mid \phi\}$ where x is one of the variables v_k and ϕ is a formula of our language.

(*ii*) A term t is either a variable or a class term.

(*iii*) *The* free variables of a term t are given by:

FVbl(t) =_{df} FVbl(ϕ)\{x} if t = {x | ϕ }; FVbl(x) = {x} if x is a variable.

We allow terms to be substituted for variables in atomic formulae x = y and $x \in y$, and for free variables in general in formulae of \mathcal{L} . We thus may write $\phi(t/x)$ for the formula ϕ with instances of xreplaced by t. Just as for substitutions of variables in ordinary formulae in first order predicate logic, we only allow substitutions of terms t into formulae ψ where free variables of t do not become unintentionally bound by quantifiers of ψ . Substitutions can always be effected after a suitable change of the bound variables of ψ . A term t with $FVbl(t) = \emptyset$ is called a *closed* term.

A term of the form $\{x \mid \phi\}$ is *not* part of our language \mathcal{L} : it is to be understood purely as an abbreviation. Likewise $\phi(t/x)$ is not part of our language if *t* is a class term. We understand these abbreviations as follows:

$$y \in \{x \mid \phi\} \text{ is } \phi(y/x);$$

$$\{x \mid \phi\} = \{z \mid \psi\} \text{ is } \forall y(\phi(y/x) \longleftrightarrow \psi(y/z))$$

$$z = \{x \mid \phi\} \text{ is } \forall y(y \in z \longleftrightarrow y \in \{x \mid \phi\})$$

$$\{x \mid \phi\} \in \{z \mid \psi\} \text{ is } \exists y(y = \{x \mid \phi\} \land \psi(y/z))$$

$$\{x \mid \phi\} \in z \text{ is } \exists y(y \in z \land y = \{x \mid \phi\})$$

Although class terms appear on both sides of the above, this in fact gives a precise recursive way of translating a "*generalised formula*" containing class terms into one that does not. Note that a simple consequence of the above is that for any x we have $x = \{y \mid y \in x\}$. Note in particular that the fourth line ensures that if we write " $s \in t$ " for terms s, t then s must be a set.

¹⁵¹ We now name certain terms and define some operations on terms. Again these are metatheoretical ¹⁵² operations: we are talking *about* our language \mathcal{L} , and talking about, or *manipulating terms*, is part of that ¹⁵³ meta-talk.

154 DEFINITION 1.2 (i) $V =_{df} \{x \mid x = x\}; \emptyset =_{df} \{x \mid x \neq x\};$ 155 (ii) $s \subseteq t =_{df} \forall x (x \in s \longrightarrow x \in t)$ 156 (iii) $s \cup t =_{df} \{x \mid x \in s \lor x \in t\}; s \cap t =_{df} \{x \mid x \in s \land x \in t\};$ 157 $\neg s =_{df} \{x \mid x \notin s\}; s \setminus t =_{df} \{x \mid x \in s \land x \notin t\}$

```
(iv) \cup s =_{df} \{x \mid \exists y (y \in s \land x \in y)\}; \cap s =_{df} \{x \mid \forall y (y \in s \longrightarrow x \in y)\}
158
           (v) \{t_1, \ldots, t_n\} =_{df} \{x \mid x = t_1 \lor x = t_2 \lor \cdots \lor x = t_n\}
159
           (vi) \langle x, y \rangle =_{df} \{ \{x\}, \{x, y\} \} (the ordered pair set)
160
           (vii) \langle x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \rangle =_{df} \langle \langle x_1, \dots, x_{n-1} \rangle, x_n \rangle (the ordered n-tuple)
161
           (viii) x \times z =_{df} \{ \langle u, v \rangle \mid u \in x \land v \in z \} (the Cartesian product of x, z)
162
                  t^2 =_{\rm df} t \times t; \ t^{n+1} = t^n \times t;
163
           (ix) \mathcal{P}(x) =_{df} \{ y \mid y \subseteq x \} (the "power class" of x.
164
           At the moment the above objects just have the status of syntactic names of certain terms, but we are
165
     going to adopt axioms that will assert that the classes defined are in fact sets. Indeed we shall say "x is a
166
      set" \iff defined a useful syntactic device: instead of writing
167
              x \times z = \{ y \mid \exists u \exists v (u \in x \land v \in z \land y = \langle u, v \rangle) \}
168
      we have placed the constructed term (u, v) to the left of the |. In general we introduce this abbreviation:
169
      we let \{t \mid \varphi\} =_{df} \{z \mid \exists \vec{u}(z = t \land \varphi)\} (whose notation is probably more easily understood through the
170
      example above, here \vec{u} is a list of variables containing all those free in t and \varphi).
171
172
           Ax1 (Empty Set Axiom) \emptyset \in V.
173
           Ax2 (Pairing Axiom) \{x, y\} \in V.
174
           Ax3 (Union Axiom) \bigcup x \in V.
175
     LEMMA 1.3 t \in V \iff \exists y(y = t).
176
```

PROOF: (Actually 1.3 is a *theorem scheme*: for each term there is a lemma corresponding to the definition of the term *t*.) By our rules on translation 1.2, $t \in V \Leftrightarrow \exists y(y = t \land (x = x)(y/x)) \Leftrightarrow \exists y(y = t \land (y = y)) \Leftrightarrow \exists y(y = t)$. Q.E.D.

180 LEMMA 1.4 **Axo-3** prove: $x \cup y \in V$; $\{x_1, \ldots, x_n\} \in V$.

181PROOF: By Ax2 $\{x, y\} \in V$ and then by Ax3 $\bigcup \{x, y\} \in V$. And $\bigcup \{x, y\} = x \cup y$ (by Axo). Repeated182application of Axo-3 shows $\{x_1, \ldots, x_n\} \in V$ (Exercise).Q.E.D.

¹⁸³ There now follow a sequence of definitions of basic notions which we have already seen in ST.

184 DEFINITION 1.5 Let *r* be a term. (i) *r* is a relation
$$\iff_{df} r \subseteq V \times V$$

185 (*ii*) r is an n-ary relation $\iff_{df} r \subseteq V^n$.

We write in (i) *xry* or *rxy* instead of
$$\langle x, y \rangle \in r$$
 and in (ii) $rx_1 \cdots x_n$ instead of $\langle x_1, \ldots, x_n \rangle \in r$.

187 DEFINITION 1.6 *If r, s are relations and u a term we set:*

$$(i) \operatorname{dom}(r) =_{\mathrm{df}} \{ x \mid \exists y(xry) \}; \operatorname{ran}(r) =_{\mathrm{df}} \{ y \mid \exists x(xry) \}; \operatorname{field}(r) =_{\mathrm{df}} \operatorname{dom}(r) \cup \operatorname{ran}(r) \}$$

189 (*ii*)
$$r \upharpoonright u =_{\mathrm{df}} \{ \langle x, y \rangle \mid xry \land x \in u \}.$$

190 (iii)
$$r^{u} =_{\mathrm{df}} \{ y \mid \exists x (x \in u \land xry \} \}.$$

191 (*iv*) $r^{-1} =_{df} \{ \langle y, x \rangle \mid xry \}.$

192 (v)
$$r \circ s =_{\mathrm{df}} \{ \langle x, z \rangle \mid \exists y (xry \land ysz) \}.$$

¹⁹³ We may define the unicity quantifier:

Preliminaries: axioms and formal systems.

- 194 DEFINITION 1.7 $\exists ! x \varphi \iff_{df} \exists z (\{z\} = \{x \mid \varphi\}).$
- ¹⁹⁵ We now define familiar functional concepts.
- ¹⁹⁶ DEFINITION 1.8 Let *f* be a relation.
- 197 (i) f is a function (Fun(f)) $\iff_{df} \forall x, y, z(fxy \land fxz \longrightarrow y = z)$ (we write f(x)=y).
- 198 (ii) f is an n-ary function $\iff_{df} f$ is a function $\land dom(f) \subseteq V^n$
- 199 (we write $f(x_1, \ldots, x_n) = y$ instead of $f(\langle x_1, \ldots, x_n \rangle) = y$).
- 200 (*iii*) $f : a \longrightarrow b \iff_{\mathrm{df}} \mathrm{Fun}(f) \wedge \mathrm{dom}(f) = a \wedge \mathrm{ran}(f) \subseteq b$.
- 201 (iv) $f: a \longrightarrow_{(1-1)} b \iff_{df} f: a \longrightarrow b \land \operatorname{Fun}(f^{-1})$ ("f is an injection or (1-1)").
- 202 (v) $f: a \longrightarrow_{\text{onto}} b \iff_{\text{df}} f: a \longrightarrow b \land \operatorname{ran}(f) = b$ ("f is onto").
- 203 (vi) $f: a \leftrightarrow b \Leftrightarrow_{df} f: a \longrightarrow_{(1-1)} b \land f: a \longrightarrow_{onto} b$ ("f is a bijection").
- DEFINITION 1.9 (i) ${}^{a}b =_{df} \{f \mid f : a \longrightarrow b\}$ the class of all functions from a to b. (ii) Let f be a function such that $\emptyset \notin ran(f)$. Then the generalised cartesian product is

 $\prod f =_{df} \{h \mid \operatorname{Fun}(h) \land \operatorname{dom}(h) = \operatorname{dom}(f) \land \forall x \in \operatorname{dom}(f)(h(x) \in f(x))\}.$

Note that $\prod f$ consists of *choice functions* for ran(f): each h "chooses" an element from each appropriate set.

207

1.2.2 The Zermelo-Fraenkel Axioms

²⁰⁸ The axioms of ZFC (Zermelo-Fraenkel with Choice) then are the following:

Axo (*Extensionality*)
$$\forall x \forall y (\forall z (z \in x \leftrightarrow z \in y) \leftrightarrow x = y)$$

- Ax1 (Empty Set) $\emptyset \in V$
- Ax2 (Pairing Axiom) $\{x, y\} \in V$
- Ax3 (Union Axiom) $\bigcup x \in V$

Ax4 (Foundation Scheme) For every term
$$a: a \neq \emptyset \longrightarrow \exists x (x \in a \land x \cap a = \emptyset)$$

- Ax5 (Separation Scheme) For every term $a: x \cap a \in V$
- Ax6 (*Replacement Scheme*) For every term $f: \operatorname{Fun}(f) \longrightarrow f^*x \in V$.
- Ax7 (Infinity Axiom) $\exists x (\emptyset \in x \land \forall y (y \in x \longrightarrow y \cup \{y\} \in x))$
- 217 **Ax8 (PowerSet Axiom)** $\mathcal{P}(x) \in V$

Ax9 (Axiom of Choice)
$$\operatorname{Fun}(f) \wedge \operatorname{dom}(f) \in V \land \emptyset \notin \operatorname{ran}(f) \longrightarrow \prod f \neq \emptyset$$

²¹⁹ NOTE 1.10 (i) ZF comprises Axo-8; Sometimes Ax6 is replaced by:

- Ax6' (*Collection Scheme*) For every term $r: \forall xr^*x \neq \emptyset \longrightarrow \forall w \exists t (\forall u \in w \exists v \in t(\langle u, v \rangle \in r)).$
- ²²¹ The Axiom of Choice is equivalent over ZF to the Wellordering Principle:
- Ax9'(Wellordering Principle) $\forall x \exists r(\operatorname{Rel}(r) \land \langle x, r \rangle \text{ is a wellordering}).$

There are two useful subsystems. ZF with Replacement dropped is called Z for Zermelo. ZF^- is Axo-5,6',7; ZFC⁻ is ZF⁻ with Ax9'.

(ii) ZF is an infinite list of axioms: Ax4,5,6, (and 6') are *schemes*: there is one axiom for each formula defining the mentioned terms *a* and *f* (or *r* in 6'). We shall later prove that it cannot be replaced by a finite list with the same consequences. (iii) The statements differ in their formulation from ST: Foundation was there stated just for sets, and
 was a single axiom; Separation was given its synonym "Comprehension": and was stated as follows:

(The set of elements of a set z satisfying some formula, form a set.) For each formula $\varphi(v_0, \dots, v_{n+2})$ (with free variables amongst those shown),

 $\forall z \forall w_1 \dots \forall w_n \exists y \forall x (x \in y \leftrightarrow x \in z \land \varphi[z, x, w_1, \dots, w_n]).$

The formulation above shows how powerful and succinct a formulation we have if we allow ourselves to use terms. Likewise Replacement there had a much longer (but equivalent) formulation.

(iv) The axioms are of different kinds: one group asserts that simple operations on sets leads to further 233 sets (such as Union, Pairing). Another group consists of set existence axioms (Empty Set, Separation). 234 Others are of "delimiting size" nature: the power class $\mathcal{P}(x)$ may be thought to be a large incoherent 235 collection of *all* subsets of x. The power set axiom claims that this is not a large collection but merely 236 another set. The Replacement Scheme assures us that functions however defined cannot create a non-set 237 from a set. It thus also in effect delimits size. This axiom is due to Fraenkel. The term 'Replacement' 238 comes from the idea that if one has a set, and a method (or function) for replacing each member of that 239 set by a different set, then the resulting object is also a set. Zermelo's achievement was to recognize (a) 240 the utility, if not the necessity, of formulating a formal set of axioms for the new subject of set theory 241 - which he then enunciated; (b) that the Separation scheme was a method to avoid paradoxes of the 242 Russell/Burali-Forti kind. Zermelo essentially wrote down the system Z although Separation was given 243 a second order formulation. Later Skolem gave the familiar first order formulation equivalent to the 244 above. Again the Axiom of Choice asserts the existence of a rather specialised set: a choice function for a 245 collection of sets. In ST we adopted the axiom that "Every set can be wellordered" for AC (on pedagogical 246 grounds). We saw there that this principle was equivalent to the existence of choice functions. 247

(v) One may ask simply: Are these right axioms? There are indeed other formulations of set theory,
some involving class terms more directly as further objects. Our point of view is that the V hierarchy
comprises all that is needed for mathematics, further we have a somewhat less developed intuition about
what such "objects" these free-standing class terms could possible be: if they are attempts to continue
the V-hierarchy even further, by using the power class operation "just one more time" this would seem
to miss the point. Since we have no need for classes as some other kind of separate entities of a different
sort, we avoid them.

One formulation of set theory (which Gödel used - and is named von Neumann-Gödel-Bernays) does however include *class variables* in the object language but disallows quantification over classes: it can be shown that this system is *conservative over ZFC*: that is, it proves no more theorems about sets than ZFC itself, and so is treated by set theorists virtually as a harmless variant of ZFC.

We use a *first order* formulation of set theory (meaning that quantifiers $\exists x, \forall x$ quantify only over 259 our objects of interest, namely sets. A second order formulation ZF^2 is possible, where, as in any second 260 order language, we are allowed quantifiers such as $\exists P, \forall P$ that range over predicates P of sets. There are 261 two points that could be made here. Firstly, as a predicate P is extensionally a collection of sets itself, 262 even to understand the *meaning* of a second order sentence involving say a quantifier $\forall P$ is to already 263 claim an understanding about the universe V. And it is V itself that we are trying to understand in the 264 first place. As in all areas of mathematics, first order formulations of theories are the most successful: we 265 may not know of a first order sentence σ whether it is true or not, but we do know precisely what it means 266

Transfinite Recursion

for it to be true. Secondly the tools of mathematical logic are the most useful in the setting of first order 267 logic. The deductive system associated to ZF² lacks a Completeness Theorem, and hence Compactness 268 and Löwenheim-Skolem Theorems fail. In ZF² it is possible to argue that since the only possible models 269 of ZF² are V itself and possible initial segments of V of the form V_{κ} (as Zermelo demonstrated), then 270 ZF^2 shows that, e.g. CH has a definite truth value: namely that obtained by inspecting that level of the 27 V-hierarchy where all subsets of N live: $V_{\omega+1}$. However as to what that truth value is, we have no idea. 272 Hence we are no further forward! Indeed second order logic and ZF² seems not to give us any tangible 273 information about the universe of sets that we do not obtain from the first order formulations of ZFC 274 and its extensions. 275

(vi) Some formulations or viewpoints concerning the mathematical hierarchy of sets take as the base 276 of that hierarchy not the empty set (" $V_0 = \emptyset$ ") but rather a collection of "atoms" or base objects: thus 277 instead we take $V_0[U] = U$ where U is this collection of Urelemente and we build our hierarchy by 278 iterating the power set operation from this point onwards. This may be of presentational benefit, but, at 279 least if U is a set (meaning that it has a cardinality), then this is of limited foundational interest to the 280 pure set theorist.⁴ The reason being, that, if $|U| = \kappa$ say, then we may build an isomorphic copy of V[U]281 *inside* V, by starting with some κ sized set or structure which is an appropriate copy of U. Hence again 282 to study V is to study all such universes V[U], and we may limit our discussion to universes of "pure 283 sets" without additional atomic elements. 284

1.3 TRANSFINITE RECURSION

286 We recall the definitions of *transitive set*.

285

- 287 DEFINITION 1.11 *x* is transitive (Trans(x)) if $\forall z \in x (z \subseteq x)$.
- We have the following scheme of \in -induction:

LEMMA 1.12 (scheme of \in -induction) For any formula φ :

$$\forall x [\forall y \in x \varphi(y) \to \varphi(x)] \to \forall x \varphi(x).$$

²⁸⁹ This principle was used in the proof of:

THEOREM 1.13 (Transfinite Recursion along \in)

If G is a term and $G: V \times V \rightarrow V$ then there is a term F giving $F: V \rightarrow V$

(*)
$$\forall xF(x) = G(x, F \upharpoonright x).$$

Moreover the term defines a unique function, in that if F' is any other term satisfying (*) then, $\forall x F(x) = F'(x)$.

⁴This is not to say that models with atoms are without utility: formulations of ZF with atoms, "ZFA", are of great use for studying universes in which the Axiom of Choice fails. The point being made is that we cannot get any additional knowledge about *foundational* questions by using them.

²⁹³ Note: (i) Usually one speaks instead of *G*, *F* being defined by formulae φ_G , φ_F etc., but we have ²⁹⁴ replaced that with talk about terms. In the proof of Theorem 1.13 we, in effect, saw how to build up from ²⁹⁵ the formula φ_G the formula φ_F . This is in essence a *Theorem Scheme*: it is one theorem for each term *G*. ²⁹⁶ The 'canonical' procedure for building the formula φ_F given φ_G now becomes a method for building a ²⁹⁷ canonical term defining *F* from one defining *G*.

(ii) Often one first proves a transfinite recursion theorem along On: as the ordering relation amongst
 ordinals *is* the ∈-relation, we can view the latter theorem as simply a special case of Theorem 1.13. From
 these we proved the existence of functions giving the arithmetical operations on ordinals, and their basic
 properties. It is often useful to have the notion of a wellfounded relation in general:

DEFINITION 1.14 If *R* is relation on a class *A* then we say *R* is wellfounded iff for any *z*, if $z \cap A \neq \emptyset$ then there is $y \in z \cap A$ which is *R*-minimal (that is $\forall x \in z \cap A(\neg xRy)$).

An important example of a definition by transfinite recursion along \in is that of the *transitive closure* operation TC.

DEFINITION 1.15 TC is that class term given by Theorem 1.13 satisfying

$$\forall x \operatorname{TC}(x) = x \cup \bigcup \{ \operatorname{TC}(y) \mid y \in x \}$$

EXERCISE 1.1 In ST TC was given an alternative (but equivalent) definition, and was shown to satisfy the definition of TC above. Rework this by showing, using the above definition, that: (i) $x \in y \longrightarrow TC(x) \subseteq TC(y)$. (ii) Show that TC(x) is the smallest transitive set t satisfying $x \subseteq t$. [Hint: Use \in -recursion.] (Thus if $Trans(t) \land x \subseteq$ $t \longrightarrow TC(x) \subseteq t$.) Moreover $Trans(x) \leftrightarrow TC(x) = x$. (iii) Define by recursion on $\omega: \bigcup^0 x = x; \bigcup^{n+1} x =$ $\bigcup (\bigcup^n x); tc(x) = \bigcup \{\bigcup^n (x) \mid n < \omega\}$. Show that tc(x) = TC(x).

³¹¹ DEFINITION 1.16 For $x \subseteq On, x \in V$, $\sup(x) =_{df}$ the least ordinal γ so that $\beta \in x \rightarrow \beta \leq \gamma$.

In particular if *x* has no largest element, then $\sup(x) = \bigcup x$.

DEFINITION 1.17 (The rank function ρ) The rank function is defined by transfinite recursion on \in :

$$\rho(x) = \sup\{\rho(y) + 1 \mid y \in x\}.$$

EXERCISE 1.2 Show that: (i) the relation $xRy \leftrightarrow x \in TC(y)$ is wellfounded; (ii) $\forall x(\rho(x) = \rho(TC(x)))$; (iii) Trans $(x) \rightarrow \rho^{*}x \in On$.

³¹⁶ DEFINITION 1.18 (**The Cumulative Hierarchy**) *The* V_{α} *function is defined by transfinite recursion on* On ³¹⁷ *as* : $V_{\alpha} = \{x \mid \rho(x) < \alpha\}$.

In ST we defined the V_{α} hierarchy by iterating the power set operation. The previous definition does not use AxPower and together with the next exercise shows that we can define the latter hierarchy without it.

EXERCISE 1.3 Define by recursion $R_0 = \emptyset$, $R_{\alpha+1} = \mathcal{P}(R_{\alpha})$ and for $\text{Lim}(\lambda)$, $R_{\lambda} = \bigcup_{\alpha < \lambda} R_{\alpha}$. Show by transfinite induction that for any $\alpha \in \text{On that } R_{\alpha} = V_{\alpha}$.

323

1.4 Relativisation of terms and formulae

We may classify concepts according to the syntactic complexity of their definitions. Accordingly we then first classify formulae of our language \mathcal{L} as follows.

Bounded quantifiers: $\forall v_i \in v_j \psi$, $\exists v_i \in v_j \psi$ abbreviate: $\forall v_i (v_i \in v_j \rightarrow \psi)$ and $\exists v_i (v_i \in v_j \land \psi)$ respectively. We allow terms for v_j here: $\forall x \in a\psi$ is $\forall x (x \in a \longrightarrow \psi)$ etc.

The Levy hierarchy: We stratify formulae according to their complexity by counting alternations of quantifiers. We first define the Δ_0 -formulae of \mathcal{L} inductively:

(i) $v_i \in v_i$ and $v_i = v_i$ are Δ_0 .)

(ii) If φ , ψ are Δ_0 , then so are $\neg \varphi$ and $(\varphi \lor \psi)$.

(iii) If φ is Δ_0 so is $\exists v_i \in v_j \varphi$.

Having defined Δ_0 as those without unbounded quantifiers, we then proceed, first setting $\Sigma_0 = \Pi_0 = \Delta_0$:

(i) If φ is $\prod_{n=1}$ then $\exists v_{i_1} \cdots \exists v_{i_n} \varphi$ is Σ_n .

(ii) If φ is Σ_n then $\neg \varphi$ is Π_n .

One should note that if a formula is classified as Σ_n then it is logically equivalent to a Σ_m formula (or to a Π_m -formula) for any $m \ge n$, by the trivial process of adding dummy quantifiers at the front. Of particular interest are *existential* formulae: those that are Σ_1 : $\exists x \varphi$ with $\varphi \Delta_0$. Such assert a simple set existence statement, and *universal* formulae: these are Π_1 : $\forall x \varphi$ whose truth requires, *prima facie*, an inspection over all sets (although in practice we shall see that by the Downward Lowenheim Skolem Theorem, we may sometimes restrict that apparent unbounded search). Occasionally, for *T* a finite set of formulae, we write $\bigwedge T$ for the single formula that is their conjunction.

Some terms will be seen to be *definite* in that they define the same object in whatever world the 344 definition takes place. This may sound obscure at the moment, but one can perhaps see that the definition 345 of the empty set provides a definite object \emptyset which is "constant" across possible universes where it might 346 be defined; likewise given any structure U with sets x, y as members and in which the Pairing Axiom 347 holds, then the term $t = \{u \mid u = x \lor u = y\}$ defines the same object in U as in any other structure 348 satisfying these conditions. This is in contradistinction to a term such as $t = \{y \mid y \subseteq x\}$ which defines 349 the power set of a set x: although the defining formula " $v_0 \subseteq v_1$ " is extremely simple, which subsets of x 350 get picked up when we apply the definition, depends on which *structure U* we apply the definition in. It 351 is thus not a *definite term*. We shall need investigate this and give a criterion for when terms are definite. 352 This leads on to the important notion of absoluteness. 353

We shall be interested in looking at models $\langle M, E \rangle$ of ZFC + Φ for various statements Φ . For this to 354 be really meaningful we shall want that certain terms and notions defined by certain formulae that are 355 interpreted in the model (M, E) mean the same thing as when that term or formula is applied in (V, \in) : 356 this is the notion of "absoluteness". Certain (simple) objects, such as \emptyset , ω and the like, are defined by the 357 same syntactic terms evaluated in V or in M. It is possible to think about models where the interpretation 358 of the \in symbol is something other than the usual set membership relation. Such models are called *non*-359 standard models, and do not feature highly in this course (or in the wider development of set theory). 360 We shall be most interested in *transitive* sets or classes W and where E is taken to be the genuine set 361 membership relation \in . Such an $\langle W, \in \rangle$ is called a *transitive* \in -model. However terms can have different 362 interpretations even when considered in V and in a standard transitive model (W, \in) . We first have to 363

say what it means for an axiom or sentence φ to "hold" or "to be interpreted" in such a structure. We

³⁶⁵ build up a definition by recursion on the structure of φ by straightforwardly restricting quantifiers to the ³⁶⁶ new putative "universe" W.

³⁶⁷ DEFINITION 1.19 Let W be a term. We define by recursion on complexity of formulae φ of \mathcal{L} the relativi-³⁶⁸ sation of φ to W, φ^W :

$$(i) (x \in y)^{W} =_{df} (x \in y); (x = y)^{W} =_{df} (x = y);$$

 $(ii) (\neg \psi)^{W} =_{df} \neg (\psi^{W});$

371 (*iii*)
$$(\psi \lor \chi)^W =_{\mathrm{df}} (\psi^W \lor \chi^W)$$

(iv) $(\exists x\psi)^W =_{df} \exists x \in W\psi^W$ if x is not in FVbl(W); otherwise this is undefined.

Notice that we can always ensure that $(\varphi)^W$ is defined by replacing the bound variables in φ by others 373 different from those of W. We tacitly that this has always been done when discussing relativising formu-374 lae. It is immediate that, e.g. $(\forall x\psi)^W \leftrightarrow \forall x \in W\psi^W$. We shall be thinking of class terms W as being 375 potential \in - structures - meaning that we shall be thinking of them potentially as models (W, \in) . We 376 shall read $(\varphi)^W$ as " φ holds in W" or " φ holds relativised to W". The following theorem (with $\Gamma = \varphi$) 377 says the theorems of predicate calculus in \mathcal{L} are valid in non-empty \in -structures $\langle W, \in \rangle$. We use the 378 shorthand that if Γ is a finite set of formulae, then $\bigwedge \Gamma$ is the single formula that is the conjunction of 379 those in Γ . 380

THEOREM 1.20 Let $\Gamma \cup \{\sigma\}$ be a finite set of sentences in \mathcal{L} and W a transitive non-empty term; assume that if \vec{x} is a list of all the variables occurring in $\Gamma \cup \{\sigma\}$ then $\vec{x} \cap FVbl(W) = \emptyset$. If $\Gamma \vdash \sigma$ then $(\bigwedge \Gamma)^W \longrightarrow \sigma^W$.

PROOF: By induction on the length of the derivation of σ from Γ . Q.E.D.

This is just as it should be: roughly, it is a form of *Soundness*: if we can prove that σ is derivable from a set of axioms true in a structure, then σ should be true in that structure.

```
<sup>388</sup> LEMMA 1.21 Let W be a transitive class term, Then (AxExt)^W.
```

```
<sup>389</sup> PROOF: The Axiom of Extensionality relativised to W is:
```

 $(\forall x \forall y (\forall z (z \in x \leftrightarrow z \in y) \to x = y))^W$

 $_{391} \quad \leftrightarrow \forall x \in W \forall y \in W (\forall z (z \in x \leftrightarrow z \in y) \rightarrow x = y)^W$

 $392 \quad \leftrightarrow \forall x \in W \forall y \in W (\forall z \in W (z \in x \leftrightarrow z \in y)^W \to (x = y)^W)$

 $_{393} \quad \leftrightarrow \forall x \in W \forall y \in W (\forall z \in W (z \in x \leftrightarrow z \in y) \rightarrow x = y)$

Since *W* is transitive, if $x, y \in W$ then $x, y \subseteq W$. Hence if $\exists z (z \in x \setminus y \cup y \setminus x)$ then $\exists z \in W (z \in x \setminus y \cup y \setminus x)$. Hence the \rightarrow of the last equivalence is true!

```
396
```

The next concern is how to relativise a formula that contains class terms. It should turn out that if we have such a formula we should be able to first relativise the terms it contains to W (Def.1.22) and then substitute the results into the relativised formula of \mathcal{L} .

400 DEFINITION 1.22 Let $t = \{x \mid \varphi\}$ be a class term; the relativisation of t to W, is: $t^W =_{df} \{x \in W \mid \varphi^W\}$.

401 Example (i) $V^W = \{x \mid x = x\}^W = \{x \in W \mid (x = x)^W\}$. Since $(x = x)^W$ is just x = x, this renders 402 $V^W = V \cap W = W$.

403 Example (ii) $(\bigcup x)^W = (\{z \mid \exists y (z \in y \in x)\})^W = \{z \in W \mid (\exists y (z \in y \in x))^W\} = \{z \in W \mid \exists y \in W (z \in y \in x)^W\} = \{z \in W \mid \exists y \in W (z \in y \in x)\}.$

Notice that if additionally *W* is a transitive term, (*i.e.* defines a transitive class) then $x \in W \longrightarrow x \subseteq$ *W*; moreover $\forall y (y \in x \longrightarrow y \subseteq W)$. Hence $\{z \in W \mid \exists y \in W(z \in y \in x)\} = \{z \mid \exists y (z \in y \in x)\}$ and so in this case $(\bigcup x)^W = \bigcup x$. This demonstrates that \bigcup is an *absolute operation for transitive classes* and the process of relativisation yields the same set. We shall be particularly interested in such absolute operators and similarly absolute properties for transitive classes.

LEMMA 1.23 Let t_0, \ldots, t_n and W be terms, with W transitive, let $\varphi(x_0, \ldots, x_n)$ be in \mathcal{L} ; then assuming $\vec{y} \supseteq FVbl(\varphi(t_0, \ldots, t_n))$:

$$\forall \vec{y} \in W(\varphi(t_0,\ldots,t_n)^W \longleftrightarrow \varphi^W(t_0^W,\ldots,t_n^W)).$$

REMARK: The lemma is about syntax, formulae and terms. The x_i 's are (meta-)variables ("meta" because they are standing in for some official variables $v_{i_0}, \ldots v_{i_n}$). In this context the notation is supposed to mean that each of the terms t_0, \ldots, t_n is then substituted for the corresponding variable $x_0, \ldots x_n$. Above we said that we should more properly indicate this by: " $\varphi(t_0/x_0, \ldots, t_n/x_n)$ " but this becomes too cumbersome, and too tedious to do all the time, so we just leave it for the reader to do depending on the context.

416

⁴¹⁷ PROOF: By induction on the complexity of φ .

EXERCISE 1.4 Convince yourself of the truth of the last lemma. [Hint: At least set out the base cases of the induction: suppose φ is $v_0 \in v_1$ and let $t_0 = x$, $t_1 = \{z \mid \psi\}$. Then $(x \in t_1)^W \leftrightarrow (x \in \{z \mid \psi\})^W \leftrightarrow \psi(x/z)^W \leftrightarrow x \in \{z \mid z \in W \land \psi^W\} \leftrightarrow x^W \in (t_1)^W$. The other base cases are relatively straightforward, but a little lengthy to write out. The inductive step for non-atomic formulae is easy by comparison.]

LEMMA 1.24 Let W be a transitive term and suppose for any $x, y \in W$, $\{x, y\} \in W$, then $(AxPair)^W$.

PROOF: We need to show $(\{x, y\} \in V)^W$. First just note that by Def. 1.22:

$$\{x, y\}^{W} = \{z \in W \mid (z = x \lor z = y)^{W}\} = \{z \in W \mid z = x \lor z = y\} = \{x, y\}.$$

By supposition we have that: $\forall x, y \in W(\{x, y\} \in W) \leftrightarrow \forall x, y \in W(\{x, y\}^W \in V^W) \leftrightarrow (\forall x, y(\{x, y\} \in V)^W)$. (The last \leftrightarrow uses implicitly an atomic formula clause from 1.23)

426 LEMMA 1.25 Let W be a transitive term.

- (*i*) If for any $x \in W$, $\bigcup x \in W$ then $(AxUnion)^W$;
- (*ii*) If $\omega \in W$ then $(Ax. Infinity)^W$.
- (*iii*) If for any $x \in W$ and any term $a \ x \cap a^W \in W$ then (AxSeparation)^W;
- (iv) If for any $x \in W$, and term f with f^W being a function, f^W " $x \in W$ holds, then (AxReplacement)^W.

Q.E.D.

Q.E.D.

Q.E.D.

PROOF: (i) By *Example (ii)* above, because W is assumed transitive, $(\bigcup x)^W = \bigcup x$. Moreover $V^W = \{z \in W \mid z = z\} = W$. By assumption $\forall x \in W \bigcup x \in W$. Hence

 $\forall x \in W(\bigcup x)^W \in W \leftrightarrow \forall x \in W(\bigcup x \in V)^W \leftrightarrow (\forall x \bigcup x \in V)^W; \text{ the latter is } (AxUnion)^W.$

(iii) We need to show $(\forall x \ a \cap x \in V)^W$. Suppose $\vec{y} = FVbl(a)$. This is equivalent (by Lemma 1.23) to, $\forall \vec{y} \in W$:

 $\forall x \in W((a \cap x)^W \in V^W)^W \leftrightarrow \forall x \in W((a \cap x)^W \in W).$

But, for any $x \in W$, But, for any $x \in W$,

438

 $(a \cap x)^W = \{z \in W \mid (z \in a \land z \in x)^W\} = \{z \in W \mid z \in a^W \land z \in x\}.$

As Trans(W), $x \subseteq W$, so this is $a^W \cap x$. By assumption this is indeed in W.

440 EXERCISE 1.5 Show (ii) and (iv) of the last Lemma.

LEMMA 1.26 Let W be a non-empty transitive term satisfying all the hypotheses of Lemmata 1.24, 1.25. Then (ZF^{-})^W that is, each axiom of ZF^{-} holds in W.

PROOF: We are only left with the Axioms of the Empty Set and Foundation. But $\emptyset^W = \emptyset$ (Check!), and \emptyset is a member of any non-empty transitive class (why?). For Foundation let *a* be a term, and suppose that $(a \neq \emptyset)^W$. Suppose $x \in a^W \cap W$. Now, by Axiom of Foundation (applied in *V*) as $a^W \neq \emptyset$, let x_0 be an element of a^W with $x_0 \cap a^W = \emptyset$. Hence $(a \neq \emptyset \rightarrow \exists z(z \cap a = \emptyset))^W$. Q.E.D.

Lemma 1.26 is again a theorem scheme: given a class term for which we can prove the assumptions hold for it, (which itself is an infinite list of proofs in ZF if *all* the assumptions of Lemma 1.25 are verified) *then* the lemma states that for any axiom φ of ZF⁻ then ZF $\vdash \varphi^W$. (This can be trivially extended to a finite list of axioms $\vec{\varphi}$ by taking a simple conjunction - but it cannot be extended to an infinite list!) The next lemma gives a sufficient (but not necessary) condition for AxPower to hold in a transitive class term. The proof is similar to those above.

LEMMA 1.27 Let W be a transitive term satisfying for any $x \in W$, that $\mathcal{P}(x) \in W$; then $(AxPower)^W$. Consequently if W satisfies this in addition to the hypothesis of the last lemma then $(ZF)^W$, that is all of ZF holds in W.

We shall see later that we can prove the existence of transitive \in -models $\langle W, \in \rangle$, with W a set, for which $(ZF^{-})^{W}$, by establishing the existence of transitive sets satisfying precisely the above closure conditions. We thus shall show for such a W that, assuming ZF, we can show $(ZF^{-})^{W}$. However in ZF we cannot prove the existence of sets (transitive or otherwise) W for which $(ZF)^{W}$. (We shall see that this leads to a contradiction with Gödel's Second Incompleteness Theorem.)

462 EXERCISE 1.6 Let $\varphi(v_0, \ldots, v_n)$ be any formula. Let $g_{\varphi}(\vec{y}) \approx$ the least β such that $\exists x \varphi(x, \vec{y}) \rightarrow \exists x \in V_{\beta}\varphi(x, \vec{y})$ if 463 such an x exists; let it be 0 otherwise. Show that $\forall \xi g_{\varphi} ``V_{\xi} \in V$. Deduce that $f_{\varphi}(\xi) =_{df} \sup(g_{\varphi} ``V_{\xi})$ is a welldefined 464 function.

EXERCISE 1.7 Let *W* be the class term $\{\emptyset\}$. Which axioms of ZFC hold in $\langle W, \in \rangle$? Consider the class term On. Which axioms of ZFC hold in $\langle On, \in \rangle$? (NB For the latter $\langle On, \in \rangle$ just is $\langle On, < \rangle$.)

⁴⁶⁷ EXERCISE 1.8 Which axioms of ZFC hold in V_{ω} ?

15

EXERCISE 1.9 Check, or recheck, the following basic properties of the V_{α} using the Definitions 1.17, 1.18 of ρ and V_{α} : (i) Trans (V_{α}) ; *in particular show if* $x \in V_{\alpha}$ *then* $\forall y \in x(y \in V_{\alpha} \land \rho(y) < \rho(x))$;

470 (ii) $\alpha < \beta \longrightarrow V_{\alpha} \subseteq V_{\beta};$ 471 (iii) $V_{\alpha+1} = \mathcal{P}(V_{\alpha});$

(iv) If $x \in V$, then $\rho(x) = \text{least } \alpha$ so that $x \subseteq V_{\alpha} = \text{least } \alpha$ such that $x \in V_{\alpha+1}$.

473 (v) $\rho(\alpha) = \alpha$;

474 (vi) $On \cap V_{\alpha} = \alpha$.

EXERCISE 1.10 There are a number of definable wellorders on ${}^{n}On$: here is one: for $\vec{\alpha} = \langle \alpha_{0}, \ldots, \alpha_{n-1} \rangle$, $\vec{\beta} = \langle \beta_{0}, \ldots, \beta_{n-1} \rangle$ set $\vec{\alpha} < {}^{n}\vec{\beta}$ iff $\max(\vec{\alpha}) < \max(\vec{\beta})$ or $(\max(\vec{\alpha}) = \max(\vec{\beta})) \land ($ if *i* is least so that $\alpha_{i} \neq \beta_{i}$ then $\alpha_{i} < \beta_{i}$. $\langle {}^{n}\vec{\beta} \rangle$. $\langle {}^{n}\vec{\beta} \rangle$ is then Δ_{0} expressible. Check that this is a wellorder.

478 EXERCISE 1.11 Prove that following is a wellorder of $On^{<\omega}$ where the latter is the class of finite sets of ordinals: for

479 $p, q \in [On]^{<\omega}$ define $p <^* q$ iff max $\{p \triangle q\} \in q$. That is, $p <^* q$ iff the largest element of $p \setminus q \cup q \setminus p$ is in q.

[Hint: it is perhaps to easier to observe first that this ordering is just the lexicographic ordering on the sequences

⁴⁸¹ $\vec{p}, \vec{q} \in {}^{<\omega}On$ of the sets p, q when written out as sequences in *descending* order.]

CHAPTER 2

INITIAL SEGMENTS OF THE UNIVERSE

In this chapter we look at some properties of initial segments of the universe V: typically local properties 484 of singular and regular cardinals, and the classes of sets *hereditarily of cardinality* less than some κ . These 485 do not depend on the whole universe of sets. We shall see that when studying wellfounded models of 486 our theory, it suffices to concentrate our efforts on models (M, \in) where M is a *transitive* set, rather than 487 more general (N, E). An important application of the Axiom of Replacement is the *Montague-Levy* 488 Reflection Theorem: this says that for any given finite set of formulae, we can prove in our theory that 489 there are arbitrarily large V_{α} that correctly 'reflect the truth' as regards what those formulae say about 490 the sets in V_{α} . Cardinals κ that are simultaneously both fixed points of certain functions and regular are 49 called *strongly inaccessible*. If such exist then we can find models, indeed of the form $\langle V_{\alpha}, \epsilon \rangle$, of all the 492 ZFC axioms. We discuss these in the last section. 493

494

499

2.1 SINGULAR ORDINALS: COFINALITY

We first do some basic work on notions of *regularity, singularity* and *cofinality*. This then leads into the concepts of *normal functions* and *closed and unbounded sets*, and *stationary* sets. From these further large cardinals can be defined, and although we give the briefest of illustrative examples, it is not the intention of the course to go down this route, rich as it is.

2.1.1 Cofinality

DEFINITION 2.1 A function $f : \alpha \longrightarrow \beta$ is a cofinal map, if $\sup(\operatorname{ran}(f)) = \beta$.

- ⁵⁰¹ In other words the range of *f* is *unbounded* in β .
- 502 *Example (i)* $f : \omega \longrightarrow \omega + \omega$ given by $f(n) = \omega + n$;
- 503 (*ii*) $f: \omega \longrightarrow \omega_{\omega}$ given by $f(n) = \omega_n$;

(*iii*) $g: \omega_1 \longrightarrow \omega_{\omega_1}$ given by $g(\alpha) = \omega_{\alpha}$ are all cofinal maps.

(*iv*) Define the sequence $f(0) = \omega_0$; $f(n+1) = \omega_{f(n)}$. Let $\kappa = \sup(f^*\omega)$. Then $f : \omega \longrightarrow \kappa$ is cofinal - by construction.

(*v*). Let $E \subseteq \beta$ be any subset. Suppose its order type is τ . We use the notation f_E for the function that enumerates *E* in strictly increasing order. Thus dom(f_E) will be τ which will necessarily be no greater

482

- than β . If *E* is now *unbounded* in β that is $\forall \gamma < \beta \exists \delta \in (\gamma, \beta)$ then $f_E : \tau \to \beta$ will be a cofinal map, that is moreover (1-1) and strictly increasing.
- DEFINITION 2.2 If A is a set of ordinals, and $Lim(\mu)$, then we say that A is unbounded below (or in) μ iff $\forall \alpha < \mu \exists \beta < \mu(\alpha < \beta \in A)$.
- ⁵¹³ DEFINITION 2.3 The cofinality of a limit ordinal β is the least α so that there is a cofinal map $f : \alpha \longrightarrow \beta$. ⁵¹⁴ It is denoted cf(β).
- Taking *f* as the identity map, shows immediately that $cf(\beta) \le \beta$.
- ⁵¹⁶ DEFINITION 2.4 (*i*) A limit ordinal β is singular \leftrightarrow cf(β) < β . Otherwise it is called regular. ⁵¹⁷ (*ii*) We set:
- ⁵¹⁸ Reg =_{df} { $\kappa \mid \kappa \text{ is regular}$ }; Card =_{df} { $\kappa \mid \kappa \text{ a cardinal}$ };
- Sing $=_{df} \{ \kappa \in Card \mid \kappa \text{ a singular} \}$; LimCard $=_{df} \{ \alpha \in On \mid \alpha \text{ a limit cardinal} \}$.

Example (i) $cf(\omega + \omega) = \omega$. The above example shows that $cf(\omega + \omega) \le \omega$; but it cannot be strictly less since no function with finite domain can have unbounded range in $\omega + \omega$. The same holds for *(ii)* above $cf(\omega_{\omega}) = \omega$. and $\aleph_{\omega} = \omega_{\omega}$ is an example of a cardinal with a smaller cofinality. It will follow from below that $cf(\omega_{\omega_1}) = \omega_1$.

- EXERCISE 2.1 If $Lim(\beta)$ show that for any $\alpha > 0$, $cf(\alpha \cdot \beta) = cf(\alpha + \beta) = cf(\beta)$.
- ⁵²⁵ One could define cofinality for successor β , but then it comes out always as 1, and this has little utility!

LEMMA 2.5 $cf(\beta) \le |\beta| \le \beta$. Thus, a regular ordinal must be a cardinal; to rephrase:

 $cf(\beta) = \beta \leftrightarrow \beta$ is regular $\leftrightarrow \beta$ is regular and a cardinal.

- *Examples*: $\omega = \omega_0 = \aleph_0 \in \text{Reg}$ (Hausdorff 1908); $\omega_1 = \aleph_1 \in \text{Reg}$, indeed:
- 527 Lemma 2.6 (Hausdorff 1914) Any $\lambda^+ \in$ Reg.

PROOF: Suppose this failed then note that if $f : \alpha \longrightarrow \lambda^+$ with ran(f) unbounded in λ^+ , but $\alpha < \lambda^+$, we would have that $\lambda^+ = \bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} f(\beta)$ - in other words, the union of $|\alpha| < \lambda^+$ many sets of size $< \lambda^+$. Assuming AC this is impossible - this union could have size at most λ ! Q.E.D.

531

Thus any $\aleph_{\alpha+1} = \aleph_{\alpha}^+$ is regular. (These are called *successor cardinals*.) The first singular cardinal is \aleph_{ω} , the next is $\aleph_{\omega+\omega}$; also $\aleph_{\omega_1}, \aleph_{\omega_\omega} \in$ Sing. By Hausdorff's observation above, a singular cardinal is always a *limit cardinal*: it occurs as a limit point of the cardinal enumeration function: $\alpha \rightarrow \aleph_{\alpha}$. We shall consider the question of whether the converse fails, that is whether there are cardinals that are simultaneously limit cardinals and regular later.

- 537 LEMMA 2.7 For any limit ordinal β :
- (*i*) $cf(\beta)$ is the least ordinal α so that there is a (1-1) strictly increasing cofinal map $f : \alpha \longrightarrow \beta$;
- (*ii*) $cf(cf(\beta)) = cf(\beta)$; hence (Hausdorff 1908) $cf(\beta)$ is regular;
- (iii) If $f : \alpha \longrightarrow \beta$ is cofinal and strictly increasing, then $cf(\alpha) = cf(\beta)$.

PROOF: (i) Let $f : cf(\beta) \longrightarrow \beta$ be any cofinal map. We define a $g : cf(\beta) \longrightarrow \beta$ of the desired kind from *f* by recursion on $\delta < cf(\beta)$:

$$g(0) = f(0); g(\delta + 1) = \max\{g(\delta) + 1, f(\delta)\} \text{ and } Lim(\lambda) \to g(\lambda) = \sup\{g(\delta) \mid \delta < \lambda\}.$$

Note that a) for $g(\delta) < \beta$ implies $g(\delta + 1) < \beta$ and b) for any $Lim(\eta), \eta < cf(\beta), g(\eta)$ is properly 541 defined simply because $\eta < cf(\beta)$. Thus we have dom(g) = cf(β). By definition g is strictly increasing 542 (and moreover is *continuous* at limit ordinals λ - see Def. 2.11(ii) below). As it dominates f it is cofinal 543 into β . 544

(ii) Let $\gamma = cf(cf(\beta))$. Then $\gamma \leq cf(\beta)$. However if $\gamma < cf(\beta)$ and f, g are chosen so that $f : \gamma \longrightarrow f(\beta)$. 545 $cf(\beta), g: cf(\beta) \longrightarrow \beta$ are both strictly increasing and cofinal, then their composition $g \circ f: \gamma \longrightarrow \beta$ 546 cofinally, contradicting the definition of $cf(\beta)$. Hence $\gamma = cf(\beta)$. 547 Q.E.D.

- (iii) Exercise. 548
- COROLLARY 2.8 If $\text{Lim}(\lambda)$ then $cf(\omega_{\lambda}) = cf(\lambda)$. 549
- EXERCISE 2.2 Prove (iii) of lemma 2.7 and the corollary following. 550
- The following gives an alternative characterisation of cofinality for cardinals. 551
- LEMMA 2.9 For any infinite cardinal β cf(β) is the least ordinal γ so that there is a sequence $\langle X_{\tau} | \tau < \gamma \rangle$ 552 with each $X_{\tau} \subseteq \beta \land |X_{\tau}| < \beta$ and $\bigcup_{\tau < \gamma} X_{\tau} = \beta$. 553

PROOF: Let γ be the least such ordinal defined in the lemma. If $cf(\beta) = \alpha$ then for some cofinal function 554 $h: \alpha \to \beta$, we have $\beta = \bigcup_{\tau \le \alpha} h(\tau)$. So $\gamma \le cf(\beta)$. So suppose for a contradiction that $\gamma < cf(\beta)$, and we 555 have $\bigcup_{\tau < \gamma} X_{\tau} = \beta$, with each $X_{\tau} \subseteq \beta \land |X_{\tau}| < \beta$. Define $f(\tau) = |X_{\tau}| < \beta$. As $\gamma < cf(\beta)$ we have ran(f)556 is bounded by some $\delta < \beta$. Let $g_{\tau} : X_{\tau} \leftrightarrow |X_{\tau}|$ be a bijection. Define $G(\xi) = \langle \tau, g_{\tau}(\xi) \rangle$ where τ is least 557 so that $\xi \in X_{\tau}$. Then $G : \beta \to \gamma \times \delta$ is (1-1). But then $|\beta| \le |\gamma \times \delta| = \max\{|\gamma|, |\delta|\} < \beta$. Contradiction! 558 Q.E.D. 559

EXERCISE 2.3 (E) (This exercise uses the definition of $h(\kappa)$ from Exercise 2.39.) Suppose κ is a singular cardinal. 560 Show that $|h(\kappa)| = |\mathcal{P}(\kappa)|$. Calculate $\rho(h(\kappa))$. 561

NORMAL FUNCTIONS AND CLOSED AND UNBOUNDED CLASSES 2.1.2

- For the rest of this section we let Ω denote a regular, uncountable cardinal. 563
- DEFINITION 2.10 Let A be a term and suppose $A \subseteq \Omega$. (i) Then A is closed if $\forall \mu < \Omega$ ($A \cap \mu$ is unbounded 564 in $\mu \longrightarrow \mu \in A$). 565
- (ii) We say A is c.u.b. in Ω if it is both closed and unbounded in Ω . 566
- *Note:* In clause (i) we deliberately do not require Ω to be in A if the latter is unbounded in Ω . Closure 567

is equivalent to requiring that (ii)': for any $x \in V$ if $x \subseteq A$ then $\sup x \in A \cup \{\Omega\}$. (Exercise: Check this 568

equivalence.) 569

20

Examples (i) The cofinal maps from the *Examples* of the last subsection are all closed and cofinal, although the first three which were maps just from ω cofinally into their range are rather trivially closed. The function g in the proof of (iii) of Lemma 2.7 was deliberately constructed to have range closed and unbounded in β - closure was obtained by taking for limit ordinals λ , $g(\lambda)$ to be the supremum of $g^{"}\lambda$. (ii) The class terms Lim =_{df} { $\alpha \in On | \alpha a$ limit ordinal}, Card, LimCard, are all c.u.b. in *On*.

⁵⁷⁵ DEFINITION 2.11 (Normal Function). Let $f : \Omega \longrightarrow \Omega$. Then f is normal if

576 (i) $\alpha < \beta \longrightarrow f(\alpha) < f(\beta)$;

577 (*ii*) (continuity) $\operatorname{Lim}(\lambda) \longrightarrow f(\lambda) = \sup\{f(\alpha) \mid \alpha < \lambda\}.$

Property (ii) says that *f* is *continuous*. Normal functions are quite common: all the ordinal arithmetic operations yield normal functions: $A_{\alpha}(\xi) = \alpha + \xi$; $M_{\alpha}(\xi) = \alpha.\xi$, $E_{\alpha}(\xi) = \alpha^{\xi}$ are all normal functions. The \aleph -function which enumerates the cardinals is normal by design.

EXERCISE 2.4 Let $\omega \le \kappa \in \text{Reg.}$ Define by induction on $\alpha < \kappa$ a function $f : \kappa \longrightarrow \kappa$, by f(0) = 0; $f(\beta + 1) = f(\beta) + \beta$ and $Lim(\lambda) \rightarrow f(\lambda) = \sup\{f(\beta \mid \beta < \lambda\}$. Then check that f is indeed defined for all $\alpha < \kappa$ and that f is normal. Use f to define a *partition* of κ into κ many disjoint sets of cardinality κ by setting $D_{\gamma} = \{f(\beta) + \gamma \mid \beta > \gamma\}$. Check that $D_{\gamma} \cap D_{\gamma'} = \emptyset$ for $\gamma \neq \gamma' < \kappa$; and that $\bigcup_{\gamma < \kappa} D_{\gamma} = \kappa$.

Enumerating functions of sets of ordinals are usually taken as monotonic on their domains, where, if $A \subseteq$ On we say f_A enumerates monotonically A if $f_A : \text{dom}(f_A) \leftrightarrow A$ is a bijection enumerating the elements of A in increasing order; to spell it out: $f_A(0) = \min(A)$; $f(\delta) = \min(A \setminus f^*\delta)$ if the latter is non-empty; otherwise $f(\delta)$ is undefined, and so dom $(f) = \delta$ for the least such undefined $f(\delta)$.

589 LEMMA 2.12 (VEBLEN 1908)

(*i*) Let $A \subseteq \Omega$. Then A is c.u.b. in Ω iff the enumerating function for A, f_A , is normal with dom $(f_A) = \Omega$;

⁵⁹² (*ii*) let $f : \Omega \longrightarrow \Omega$ be increasing. Then f is normal iff ran(f) is c.u.b. in Ω .

⁵⁹³ PROOF: (i) Let $f = f_A$. (\Leftarrow) As dom $(f) = \Omega$, and f is (1-1), ran(f) cannot be bounded in the cardinal ⁵⁹⁴ Ω . So A is unbounded in Ω . The continuity of f translates directly into the closure of A: if $\mu < \Omega$ and ⁵⁹⁵ suppose $A \cap \mu$ is unbounded in μ . Let $\delta < \Omega$ be such that $f \upharpoonright \delta$ enumerates $A \cap \mu$; then we have that ⁵⁹⁶ $Lim(\delta)$ and by continuity of f, $f(\delta) = \sup f``\delta = \mu$ and so μ must be in A.

(\Rightarrow) Clearly *f* is a monotone increasing function: $\alpha < \beta < \Omega \longrightarrow f(\alpha) < f(\beta)$. As *A* is closed, then *f*_A will be also *continuous*: if $\lambda \in \Omega$ is a limit then $A \cap f^*\lambda$ is unbounded in sup $f^*\lambda$. So by closure the latter is in *A* and is then $f(\lambda)$. Note now that dom(*f*) must be Ω since otherwise it is some $\beta < \Omega$ and *f* would witness that $cf(\Omega) \le \beta$. However Ω was assumed regular.

(ii) Similar. See the Exercise below.

Q.E.D.

EXERCISE 2.5 Let $f: \Omega \longrightarrow \Omega$ be strictly increasing. Then f is normal iff ran(f) is c.u.b. in Ω .

LEMMA 2.13 Let $C \subseteq \Omega$ be c.u.b. in Ω . Let f_C be the enumerating function of C. Then the class of fixed

- points of $f_C : D =_{df} \{ \alpha < \Omega \mid f_C(\alpha) = \alpha \}$ is c.u.b. in Ω . Hence for any normal function $f : \Omega \to \Omega$ there
- is a c.u.b. class of points $\alpha < \Omega$ that are fixed points for $f: f(\alpha) = \alpha$.

PROOF: Again let $f = f_C$. Let $\gamma \in \Omega$ be arbitrary. We find a member of D above γ (this shows that D is unbounded in Ω). Define: $\gamma_0 = \gamma; \gamma_{n+1} = f(\gamma_n); \gamma_\omega = \sup(\{\gamma_n \mid n < \omega\})$. Note that $\gamma_\omega \neq \Omega$. This is clear by the assumption of Ω 's regularity. We claim that $\gamma_\omega \in D$. Let $\eta < \gamma_\omega$. Then for some $n \eta < \gamma_n < \gamma_\omega$. Hence $f(\eta) < f(\gamma_n) = \gamma_{n+1} < \gamma_\omega$. Hence $f^*\gamma_\omega \subseteq \gamma_\omega$. As f is continuous, $f(\gamma_\omega) = \gamma_\omega \in D$. We are left only with showing that D is closed. Let $\mu < \Omega$ with $D \cap \mu$ unbounded in μ . Similar to showing the closure of γ_ω under f above we have that $f^*\mu \subseteq \mu$ (as any $\eta < \mu$ is less than some fixed point $\gamma < \mu$), and again by continuity $f(\mu) = \mu$. The last sentence is immediate as ran(f) is c.u.b. in Ω . Q.E.D.

DEFINITION 2.14 For any $E \subseteq$ On define E^* to be the class of limit points of E: namely those limit ordinals β such that $\beta \cap E$ is unbounded in β .

EXERCISE 2.6 For any $E \subseteq$ On, show that E^* is a closed class, and if $E \in V$ with $cf(sup(E)) > \omega$, then E^* is c.u.b. below sup(E).

EXERCISE 2.7 (i) Suppose $\Omega \in \text{Reg Let } C, D \subseteq \Omega$ be c.u.b.in Ω . Show that $C \cap D$ is c.u.b. in Ω . (ii) Now generalise this argument: suppose Ω is a regular cardinal. Let $\gamma < \Omega$. Let $\langle C_{\xi} | \xi < \gamma \rangle$ be a sequence of c.u.b.in Ω classes. Show that $\bigcap_{\xi < \gamma} C_{\xi}$ is c.u.b. in Ω .

REMARK 2.15 We used the letter Ω is this subsection rather than a generic mid-alphabet letter such as κ 620 for a cardinal (our usual convention) since it is possible to construe the results here as also holding when 621 Ω is interpreted as the class term On. To this extent On behaves like a 'regular cardinal', and we can 622 interpret many results here as holding about terms $a \subseteq On$ which are not necessarily sets. One should 623 be a little more careful than we have, when talking about sequences of classes if we allow Ω = On. In 624 this case to define a sequence of classes $(C_{\xi} | \xi < \gamma)$ with $C_{\xi} \subseteq$ On, we should speak about a single class 625 term *c* of ordered pairs (ξ, ζ) with $C_{\xi} \subseteq$ On being defined as the class $\{\zeta \mid \langle \xi, \zeta \rangle \in c\}$. With care this is 626 unambiguous and proper. We could do the same in the following exercise, but have chosen not to, and 627 628 have returned to our assumption that Ω as a regular cardinal.

EXERCISE 2.8 (DIAGONAL INTERSECTIONS) Let $\Omega \in \text{Reg.}$ Let $\langle E_{\xi} | \xi < \Omega \rangle$ be a sequence of subsets of Ω . Define the *diagonal intersection* of the sequence to be the set $D = \Delta_{\xi < \Omega} \langle E_{\xi} | \xi < \Omega \rangle =_{\text{df}} \{\alpha < \Omega | \forall \beta < \alpha (\alpha \in E_{\beta}) \}$. Now suppose that the E_{ξ} are all c.u.b. in Ω . (i) Show that the diagonal intersection D is c.u.b. in Ω . (ii) Show that $D = \bigcap_{\alpha < \Omega} (E_{\alpha} \cup (\alpha + 1))$.

DEFINITION 2.16 The
$$\supseteq$$
 (beth) function is defined by:
 $\Box_0 = \omega_0; \qquad \Box_{\alpha+1} = 2^{\Box_{\alpha}}; \qquad \Box_{\lambda} = \sup\{ \Box_{\alpha} \mid \alpha < \lambda \} \text{ if } \operatorname{Lim}(\lambda).$

This normal function has a range which as always is c.u.b. in On. By the last lemma it has a c.u.b. in Ω class of fixed points α so that $\alpha = \exists_{\alpha}$.

637 EXERCISE 2.9 Show that $\forall \alpha (|V_{\omega+\alpha}| = \exists_{\alpha}).$

EXERCISE 2.10 (i) Check that the GCH (Generalised Continuum Hypothesis: that $\forall \alpha (2^{\aleph_{\alpha}} = \aleph_{\alpha+1})$) implies that $\forall \alpha (\aleph_{\alpha} = \beth_{\alpha})$. (ii) Show that the first fixed point of the \beth function has cofinality ω . (iii) Show that for any regular cardinal κ there is α , a fixed point of the \beth function, with $cf(\alpha) = \kappa$. [Hint: this is simple, just consider an enumeration of the fixed points.]

DEFINITION 2.17 (THE C.U.B. FILTER ON κ , F_{κ}) Let $\kappa > \omega$ be regular; let 642 $X \in F_{\kappa} \longleftrightarrow \exists C \subseteq \kappa (C \text{ is } c.u.b. \land C \subseteq X).$ 643

EXERCISE 2.11 Show that F_{κ} has the following properties: 644

- (i) $X \in F \land Y \supseteq X \longrightarrow Y \in F$ 645
- (ii) $X, Y \in F \longrightarrow X \cap Y \in F$ 646
- (iii) $\forall \xi < \kappa \{\xi\} \notin F$ 647
- (iv) $\forall \xi < \kappa \forall \langle X_{\zeta} \mid \zeta < \xi \rangle [\forall \zeta (X_{\zeta} \in F) \longrightarrow \bigcap_{\zeta < \xi} X_{\zeta} \in F]$ (v) $\forall \langle X_{\zeta} \mid \zeta < \kappa \rangle [\forall \zeta (X_{\zeta} \in F) \longrightarrow \Delta_{\zeta < \kappa} X_{\zeta} \in F].$ 648
- 649

A non-empty collection F of subsets of κ satisfying (i) and (ii) is called a *filter* on κ ; property (iii) 650 states that the filter is *non-principal*; (iv) states that the filter is κ -complete; a filter closed under diagonal 651 intersections (see Exercise 2.8) in (v) is called *normal*. Not listed is the obvious fact about F_{κ} that it is 652 *non-trivial*: $\emptyset \notin F$. A filter is called an *ultrafilter* if for every $X \subseteq \kappa$ either X or $\kappa \setminus X$ is in F. The existence 653 of ultrafilters on $\kappa > \omega$ satisfying additionally (iii) and (iv) cannot be proven in ZFC, (they can for $\kappa = \omega$) 654 but is crucial for studying many consistency results in forcing theory, and for considering elementary 655 embeddings of the universe V to transitive subclasses of V. A class of subsets of κ on which there is 656 an ultrafilter satisfying (i)-(iv) is often said, in an equivalent terminology, to have a 2-valued measure, 657 in which case property (iv) is called " κ -additivity". Sets have value 0/1 depending on whether they are 658 out/in the ultrafilter. (iii) then translates as "points have measure o". 659

STATIONARY SETS 2.1.3

DEFINITION 2.18 Let $E \subseteq \Omega$. Then E is called stationary in Ω if for every $C \subseteq \Omega$ which is c.u.b., then 661 $E \cap C \neq \emptyset$. 662

If we were to talk about a class term $S \subseteq \Omega$ being stationary where Ω is allowed to be the class of all 663 the ordinals, we should declare more precisely what this means: it means that for any class term c such 664 that we can prove in ZFC that c is a closed and unbounded class of ordinals, then we can also prove that 665 $c \cap S \neq \emptyset$. 666

Stationary subsets of regular cardinals (or subclasses of On) exist: any c.u.b. subset of κ with κ 667 regular is stationary, by Exercise 2.7 (i). (Similarly for subclasses of On). But there are other stationary 668 subsets of regular cardinals. 669

EXERCISE 2.12 Let $S \subseteq \Omega$ be stationary and $C \subseteq \Omega$ be c.u.b. Then $S \cap C$ is stationary. 670

EXERCISE 2.13 Let $S \subseteq \Omega$ be stationary. Show that $S \cap S^*$ is stationary. 67

EXAMPLE 1 Let $\kappa = \omega_2$. Then $S_{\omega} =_{df} \{\alpha < \omega_2 \mid cf(\alpha) = \omega\}$ and $S_{\omega_1} =_{df} \{\alpha < \omega_2 \mid cf(\alpha) = \omega_1\}$ are two 672 disjoint stationary subsets of ω_2 : let $C \subseteq \omega_2$ be any c.u.b. subset. Let $f : \omega_2 \longrightarrow C$ be its strictly increasing 673 enumerating function. Then $f(\omega) \in C \cap S_{\omega}$ and $f(\omega_1) \in C \cap S_{\omega_1}$. 674

- EXERCISE 2.14 Can you generalise this example to larger regular cardinals, *e.g.* ω_n for $n < \omega$, or any regular $\kappa > \omega_2$? 675
- EXERCISE 2.15 Find $S_n \subseteq \aleph_{\omega+1}$ stationary, for $n < \omega$, with $S_{n+1} \subseteq S_n$ but with $\bigcap_n S_n = \emptyset$. 676
- The reason for the nomenclature comes from (ii) of the following Lemma. 677

(*i*) S is stationary in κ ;

(ii) For every function $f : S \longrightarrow On$ which is regressive (that is $\forall \alpha \in S(\alpha > 0 \longrightarrow f(\alpha) < \alpha)$), there is a stationary set $S_0 \subseteq S$ and a fixed α_0 so that $\forall \xi \in S_0(f(\xi) = \alpha_0)$

PROOF: Assume (i). If (ii) failed for some regressive function f then we should be able to define for every $\alpha < \kappa$ a c.u.b. C_{α} with $\xi \in C_{\alpha} \cap S \longrightarrow f(\xi) \neq \alpha$. Let $D = \{\alpha \mid \forall \beta < \alpha(\alpha \in C_{\beta})\}$ be the diagonal intersection of $\langle C_{\alpha} \mid \alpha < \kappa \rangle$. Then D is c.u.b. in κ and for any $\xi \in D \cap S$, $f(\xi) \notin \xi$. But if $\xi \in D \cap S$ we must have $f(\xi) < \xi$, which is a contradiction. (ii) implies (i) is trivial. Q.E.D.

Remark: AC was used heavily in picking the C_{α} in the above; if one attempts the proof without using AC one obtains in (ii) only the conclusion that for some $\alpha_0 < \kappa$ that $f^{-1} \alpha_0$ is unbounded in κ . Because one cannot in general pick class terms, if one attempts to prove the Lemma by considering regressive functions on all of On, rather than just κ , one again weakens the conclusion (see the next Exercise).

EXERCISE 2.16 (E) Let f be a function class term with dom(f) = On and f regressive. Show that for some α_0 $f^{-1}(\{\alpha_0\})$ is unbounded in On. [Hint: Suppose the conclusion fails; then define $g(\xi) = \sup f^{-1}(\{\xi\})$; now find α_0 closed under $g: g(\alpha_0 \subseteq \alpha_0)$.]

We could have defined stationary subsets of ordinals β with $cf(\beta) > \omega$. This is possible, but notice that it would make no sense to define the notion of a stationary subset β if $cf(\beta) = \omega$. For, if $f : \omega \longrightarrow \beta$ is a strictly increasing function cofinal in β then ran(f) is c.u.b. in β ; but it is easy to define another c.u.b. in β set C (of order type ω) with $ran(f) \cap C = \emptyset$ so it makes little sense to even try to define stationary in this way.

⁶⁹⁸ We saw above that ω_2 contained two disjoint stationary subsets. In fact far more is true. (The proof ⁶⁹⁹ of this theorem is omitted.)

THEOREM 2.20 (Bloch (1953), Fodor (1966), Solovay (1971)) Let $\kappa > \omega$ be regular, and let $S \subseteq \kappa$ be stationary. Then there is a sequence of κ many disjoint stationary sets $S_{\xi} \subseteq S$ for $\xi < \kappa$ (i.e. for $\zeta < \xi < \kappa$ $S_{\xi} \cap S_{\zeta} = \emptyset$) with $S = \bigcup_{\xi < \kappa} S_{\xi}$.

EXERCISE 2.17 (*)(E) (H.Friedman) Let $S \subseteq \omega_1$ be stationary. Then for any $\alpha < \omega_1$ there is a closed subset $C_{\alpha} \subseteq S$ 703 with ot $(C_{\alpha}) = \alpha + 1$. [Hint: Do this by induction on α for any stationary S. This is trivial for $\alpha = \beta + 1$ assuming it 704 is true for β (just add on more point $\tau \in S$ above sup(C_{β}) to C_{β} to get $C_{\beta+1}$ of order type $\alpha + 1$). Assume Lim(α) 705 and for $\beta < \alpha$ we can find such C_{β} . Note that for any δ we can find such C_{β} with $\min(C_{\beta}) \ge \delta$ - by considering 706 the stationary $S \setminus \delta$. Let $\langle \alpha_n \mid n < \omega \rangle$ be chosen with $\sup_n \alpha_n = \alpha$; for any δ then pick closed subsets $C_{\alpha_n} \subseteq S$ of 707 order type $\alpha_n + 1$ and with $\min(C_{\alpha_{n+1}}) > \sup(C_{\alpha_n})$. Then $\bigcup_n C_{\alpha_n} \subseteq S$ and is closed in S with the exception of the 708 point sup $(\bigcup_n C_{\alpha_n})$. Call a point arrived at as a sup of such a sequence of sets C_{α_n} an "exceptional" point. We have 709 just shown that the exceptional points are unbounded in ω_1 . But now just note that a limit of exceptional points 710 is also exceptional. That is, they form closed subset of ω_1 . As S is stationary there is an exceptional point $\sigma \in S$. 711 This σ can be added to the top of the sequence of points from the sets C'_{α_n} witnessing the exceptionality of σ ; this 712 sequence then has order type α + 1 and is contained in *S*. 713

Remark: This is not the case at higher cardinals, *e.g.* ω_2 . Let (*) be the statement "for any $X \subseteq \omega_2$ and any $\alpha < \omega_2$ either X or $\omega_2 \setminus X$ contains a closed set C with $ot(C) = \alpha$ ". Then ZFC \neq (*).

Some further cardinal arithmetic 2.2

We give some further results on cardinal arithmetic. 717

DEFINITION 2.21 Let $\langle \kappa_{\alpha} \mid \alpha < \tau \rangle$ be a sequence of cardinal numbers. Let $\langle X_{\alpha} \mid \alpha < \tau \rangle$ be a sequence of disjoint sets, with $\kappa_{\alpha} = |X_{\alpha}|$. (i) Then we define the cardinal sum

$$\sum_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha} = \big| \bigcup_{\alpha < \tau} X_{\alpha} \big|.$$

(*ii*) the cardinal product is defined as $\prod_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha} = |\prod_{\alpha < \tau} X_{\alpha}|$ 718

Note: (i) as usual these values are independent of the choices of the X_{α} . For the product the require-719 ment that the sets X_{α} be disjoint may be dropped. 720

(ii) If all the $\kappa_{\alpha} = \lambda \ge \omega$ for some fixed λ , and $\tau \in \text{Card}$, then $\sum_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha} = \tau \otimes \lambda$ and $\prod_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha} = \lambda^{\tau}$. 721

EXERCISE 2.18 Show that $\prod_{\alpha \leq \tau} \kappa_{\alpha}^{\lambda} = (\prod_{\alpha \leq \tau} \kappa_{\alpha})^{\lambda}$ and $\prod_{\alpha \leq \tau} \kappa^{\lambda_{\alpha}} = \kappa^{\sum_{\alpha < \tau} \lambda}$. 722

EXERCISE 2.19 Show that if $\kappa_{\alpha} \ge 2$ for $\alpha < \tau$, then $\sum_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha} \le \prod_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha}$. 723

- EXERCISE 2.20 Show that \prod distributes over \sum , *i.e.* that $\prod_{\alpha < \tau} \sum_{\beta < \mu} \kappa_{\alpha,\beta} = \sum_{f \in \tau_{\mu}} \prod \kappa_{\alpha,f(\alpha)}$. 724
- LEMMA 2.22 If $\omega \leq \tau \in \text{Card}$ and $\langle \kappa_{\alpha} \mid \alpha < \tau \rangle$ is a non-decreasing sequence of non-zero cardinals, then 725
- $\prod_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha} = (\sup_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha})^{\tau}.$ 726

PROOF: We partition τ into τ many disjoint pieces each of size τ (by using some bijection $\pi : \tau \times \tau \leftrightarrow \tau$). Let us say then that $\tau = \bigcup_{\beta < \tau} X_{\beta}$. Because the sequence of the κ_{α} is non-decreasing, and each X_{β} is unbounded in τ , we still have $\sup_{\alpha \in X_{\beta}} \kappa_{\alpha} = \sup_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha} = \kappa$ say, for each $\beta < \tau$. Now note that we may reorganise the product

$$\prod_{\alpha<\tau}\kappa_{\alpha} \text{ as } \prod_{\beta<\tau}\left(\prod_{\alpha\in X_{\beta}}\kappa_{\alpha}\right).$$

But $\prod_{\alpha \in X_{\beta}} \kappa_{\alpha} \ge \sup_{\alpha \in X_{\alpha}} \kappa_{\alpha} = \kappa$, hence we have that $\prod_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha} \ge \prod_{\beta < \tau} \kappa = \kappa^{\tau}$. 727

Conversely $\prod_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha} \leq \prod_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa = \kappa^{\tau}$. Hence we have equality as desired. Q.E.D. 728

Exercise 2.21 $\prod_{n < \omega} n^{\omega_0} = \omega_0^{\omega_0}; \prod_{n < \omega} \omega_n^{\omega_0} = (\omega_\omega)^{\omega_0};$ 729

THEOREM 2.23 (König's Theorem) If $\kappa_{\alpha} < \lambda_{\alpha}$ for $\alpha < \tau$ then

$$\sum_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha} < \prod_{\alpha < \tau} \lambda_{\alpha}$$

PROOF: Pick X_{α} for $\alpha < \tau$ with $|X_{\alpha}| = \lambda_{\alpha}$. We shall show that if $Y_{\alpha} \subseteq \prod_{\alpha < \tau} X_{\alpha}$ for $\alpha < \tau$ are 730 such that $|Y_{\alpha}| \leq \kappa_{\alpha}$, that then $\bigcup_{\alpha < \tau} Y_{\alpha} \neq \prod_{\alpha < \tau} X_{\alpha}$. Hence we cannot have $\sum_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha} \geq \prod_{\alpha < \tau} \lambda_{\alpha}$. Let 731 $P_{\alpha} = \{f(\alpha) \mid f \in Y_{\alpha}\}$ be the projection of Y_{α} on to the α 'th coordinate. As $|Y_{\alpha}| < |X_{\alpha}|, |P_{\alpha}| < |X_{\alpha}|$ but $P_{\alpha} \subset X_{\alpha}$. So let $f \in \prod_{\alpha < \tau} X_{\alpha}$ be any function so that for any $\alpha < \tau f(\alpha) \notin P_{\alpha}$. Then f cannot be in any Y_{α} . Thus $\bigcup_{\alpha < \tau} Y_{\alpha} \neq \prod_{\alpha < \tau} X_{\alpha}$ as we sought. Q.E.D.

- ⁷³⁵ EXERCISE 2.22 Deduce Cantor's Theorem that $\kappa < 2^{\kappa}$ from König's Theorem.
- ⁷³⁶ COROLLARY 2.24 For all β , and for all α cf $(\omega_{\beta}^{\omega_{\alpha}}) > \omega_{\alpha}$. Hence in particular cf $(2^{\kappa}) > \kappa$ for any cardinal ⁷³⁷ κ .

PROOF: Let κ_{α} be a sequence of cardinals for $\alpha < \omega_{\beta}$ with $\kappa_{\alpha} < \omega_{\beta}^{\omega_{\alpha}}$. It suffices to show that $\sum_{\alpha < \omega_{\beta}} \kappa_{\alpha} < \omega_{\beta}^{\omega_{\alpha}}$. Let λ_{α} be the fixed sequence with all $\lambda_{\alpha} = \omega_{\beta}^{\omega_{\alpha}}$. By König's Lemma then

$$\sum_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha} < \prod_{\alpha < \tau} \lambda_{\alpha} = (\omega_{\beta}^{\omega_{\alpha}})^{\omega_{\alpha}} = \omega_{\beta}^{\omega_{\alpha}}.$$
Q.E.D.

738

⁷³⁹ COROLLARY 2.25 $\kappa^{cf(\kappa)} > \kappa$ for any cardinal $\kappa \ge \omega$.

⁷⁴⁰ PROOF: For $\alpha < cf(\kappa)$ let κ_{α} be less than κ so that $\kappa = \sum_{\alpha < cf(\kappa)} \kappa_{\alpha}$. Then

$$\kappa = \sum_{\alpha < cf(\kappa)} \kappa_{\alpha} < \prod_{\alpha < cf(\kappa)} \kappa = \kappa^{cf(\kappa)}.$$
 Q.E.D.

758

We may put some of these facts to gether to get some more information about the exponentiation
 function under GCH. First:

⁷⁴⁵ EXERCISE 2.23 If $\lambda < cf(\kappa)$ then $\lambda \kappa = \bigcup_{\alpha < \kappa} \lambda \alpha = \bigcup_{cf(\kappa) < \alpha < \kappa} \lambda \alpha$.

THEOREM 2.26 Suppose GCH holds and $\kappa, \lambda \ge \omega$. Then κ^{λ} takes the following values:

 $\begin{array}{ll} & \text{747} & (i) \ \lambda^+ & \text{if } \kappa \leq \lambda; \\ & \text{748} & (ii) \ \kappa^+ & \text{if } \mathrm{cf}(\kappa) \leq \lambda < \kappa; \\ & \text{749} & (iii) \ \kappa & \text{if } \lambda < \mathrm{cf}(\kappa). \end{array}$

PROOF: (i) follows from $\kappa^{\lambda} = 2^{\lambda} = \lambda^{+}$. (ii) $\kappa < \kappa^{cf(\kappa)} \le \kappa^{\lambda} \le \kappa^{\kappa} = 2^{\kappa} = \kappa^{+}$; (iii) We use Ex.2.23. $\kappa^{\lambda} = |\bigcup_{\alpha < \kappa} {}^{\lambda}\alpha|$. But $|{}^{\lambda}\alpha| \le |{}^{\alpha}\alpha| = 2^{|\alpha|} = |\alpha|^{+} < \kappa$. So $\kappa \le \kappa^{\lambda} \le \kappa \otimes \sup_{\alpha < \kappa} |\alpha|^{+} = \kappa$. Q.E.D.

⁷⁵³ Without GCH the only known constraints on the exponentiation function for regular cardinals κ are ⁷⁵⁴ (a) $\kappa < 2^{\kappa}$ and (b) $\kappa < \lambda \rightarrow 2^{\kappa} \le 2^{\lambda}$. For singular κ the situation is more subtle and a discussion of this ⁷⁵⁵ involves large cardinals.

⁷⁵⁶ EXERCISE 2.24 Prove that $\exists_{\omega}^{\aleph_0} = \prod_n \exists_n = \exists_{\omega+1}$. [Hint: Every subset of \exists_{ω} can be coded as a function $\omega \to \exists_{\omega}$.]

⁷⁵⁷ EXERCISE 2.25 Assume *CH* but not *GCH*. Show that $(\aleph_n)^{\aleph_0} = \aleph_n$ for $1 \le n < \omega$.

2.3 TRANSITIVE MODELS

We have seen how certain assumptions about a transitive set or class term allows us to conclude that a number of the ZF axioms hold, by relativisation to that set or term. When thinking of a term W as a structure, which we more properly write $\langle W, \in \rangle$, we say that $\langle W, \in \rangle$ is a *transitive model*, or *transitive* \in *model* if we wish to emphasise the standard interpretation. We saw that in 1.24 and 1.25 that closure

under those lists of conditions ensured that $(ZF^{-})^{W}$. The following Lemma allows us to create transitive 763 isomorphic copies (M, \in) of possibly non-transitive structures (H, \in) . It is known as the "Collapsing 764 Lemma" since it collapses any " \in -holes" out of the structure (H, \in) . The Lemma is much more general 765 and in fact a structure (H, R) will be isomorphic to a transitive model (M, \in) provided that R satisfies 766 two necessary conditions: that it be wellfounded, and that it be "extensional". The latter simply requires 767 it to be \in -like. Clearly these conditions are necessary, since \in is itself wellfounded, and for transitive M 768 we always have that $(AxExt)^M$. 769 DEFINITION 2.27 Given a term t and a relation R on t we say that R is extensional on t iff for any $u, v \in$ 770 $t, u \neq v$ there is $z \in t$ with $zRu \leftrightarrow \neg zRv$ (i.e. $\{z \in t \mid zRu\} \neq \{z \in t \mid zRv\}$). 77 Note that \in is extensional on x if Trans(x) but need not be in general. 772

Lemma 2.28 (Mostowski (1949)-Shepherdson (1951) The Collapsing Lemma) tet $H \in V$.

(*i*) Suppose that R is wellfounded and extensional on H. Then there is a unique transitive term M and a unique collapsing isomorphism $\pi : \langle H, R \rangle \longrightarrow \langle M, \in \rangle$.

(*ii*) Additionally if $R \upharpoonright x^2 = \in \upharpoonright x^2$, $x \subseteq H$, and $\operatorname{Trans}(x)$, then $\pi \upharpoonright x = \operatorname{id} \upharpoonright x$.

PROOF: (i) (1) If π exists, then it is is unique.

Proof: Suppose π , $M = \operatorname{ran}(\pi)$ are as supposed. Let $u, v \in H$. Note if uRv then $\pi(u) \in \pi(v)$ as π preserves the order relations. Thus for $v \in H$: $\{\pi(u) \mid u \in H \land uRv\} \subseteq \pi(v)$.

However if $z \in \pi(v)$, then $z \in M$, as M is transitive. Hence $z = \pi(u)$ for some $u \in H$ with uRv. Hence $\{\pi(u) \mid u \in H \land uRv\} \supseteq \pi(v)$. Thus $\pi(v) = \{\pi(u) \mid u \in H \land uRv\}$. Thus the isomorphism, if it exists *must* take this form.

784 (2) π exists.

We thus define by *R*-recursion: $\pi(v) = {\pi(u) | u \in H \land uRv}$ (*)

- And take $M = \operatorname{ran}(\pi)$. Trivially Trans(M) by (*). (3)-(5) will show that π is an isomorphism.
- 787 (3) π is (1-1).

Proof: If not pick $t \in \text{-minimal in } M$ so that there exist $u \neq v$ with $t = \pi(u) = \pi(v)$. As $u \neq v$, and Ris extensional, there is some w with $wRu \leftrightarrow \neg wRv$. Without loss of generality we assume $wRu \land \neg wRv$. (The argument in the other case is identical.) Then $\pi(w) \in \pi(u) = t = \pi(v)$. So we must have that for some $xRv: \pi(x) = \pi(w)$ (as $\pi(v)$ is the set of all such $\pi(x)$'s). But now if we set $s = \pi(x)$, we have $s \in t$ and $\pi(x) = \pi(w) = s$ and, as $\neg wRv, x \neq w$. However this s contradicts the \in -minimality in the choice of t.

```
794 (4) \pi is onto.
```

This is trivial as *M* is defined to be $ran(\pi)$.

(5) π is an order preserving isomorphism.

We have already that π is a bijection. This then follows from the definition at $(*): uRv \to \pi(u) \in \pi(v)$.

This finishes (i). For (ii) we now assume that $R \upharpoonright x^2 = \in \upharpoonright x^2$, Trans(x) and $x \subseteq H$.

800 (6) $\pi \upharpoonright x = \mathrm{id} \upharpoonright x$.

Then for $v \in x$ we have $v \subseteq x \subseteq H$. Thus (*) becomes, for $v \in x$: $\pi(v) = \{\pi(u) \mid u \in v\}$. Now, by \in -induction on $\in \upharpoonright x \times x$ we have $\forall v \in x[(\forall u \in v \to \pi(u) = u) \to \pi(v) = v] \to \forall v \in x(\pi(v) = v).$ Q.E.D.

804

826

The resulting structure *M* is called the 'collapse', or better, the 'transitive collapse' of $\langle H, R \rangle$. To illustrate how the Collapsing Lemma works note the following exercise:

EXERCISE 2.26 Let $(H, R) \in WO$. Apply the Collapsing Lemma. What is the outcome?

Note the use in the above of a recursion along the wellfounded relation R rather than \in . More generalised forms of this argument are possible. We may take any class term t in place of the set H and provided the wellfounded extensional relation R is *set-like* - meaning for any $u \in t \{v | vRu\} \in V$, then the same argument may be used, and a class term M defined in the same way.

812 LEMMA 2.29 (GENERAL MOSTOWSKI-SHEPHERDSON COLLAPSING LEMMA) Let A be a class term.

(*i*) If $R \subseteq A \times A$ be a wellfounded extensional relation which is set-like in the above sense. Then there is a unique term M, and unique collapsing isomorphism $\pi : \langle A, R \rangle \longrightarrow \langle M, \in \rangle$.

(*ii*) If $R = \in$ then if s is a transitive term with $s \subseteq A$, then $\pi \upharpoonright s = \text{id} \upharpoonright s$.

EXERCISE 2.27 Show that V_{ω} can be 'coded' as a subset of ω : that is there is $E \subseteq \omega$ so that $\langle \omega, E \rangle \cong \langle V_{\omega}, \epsilon \rangle$. [Hint: Define $nEm \longleftrightarrow_{df}$ the "2ⁿ" column in the binary expansion of *m* contains a 1; (thus $\{n \mid nE11\} = \{0, 1, 3\}$); check there is *u* satisfying $\langle \omega, E \rangle \cong \langle u, \epsilon \rangle$ with Trans(*u*). Show $u = V_{\omega}$.]

EXERCISE 2.28 Show if $(A, \in), (B, \in)$ are transitive sets, and $f : (A, \in) \cong (B, \in)$ is an isomorphism, then $f = id \upharpoonright A$.

EXERCISE 2.29 Suppose Trans(x) and $f : \kappa \leftrightarrow x$ is a bijection. Define $E \subseteq \kappa \times \kappa$ by: $\langle \alpha, \beta \rangle \in E \leftrightarrow f(\alpha) \in f(\beta)$. Show that $\langle \kappa, E \rangle \cong \langle x, \in \rangle$ and that the isomorphism is the Mostowski-Shepherdson collapse map. Let $g : \kappa \times \kappa \leftrightarrow \kappa$ be a further bijection. Then if $\widetilde{E} = g^{-1} \in K$, we can then think of x as coded by a subset of κ , namely by \widetilde{E} . Note that

x will have 2^{κ} -many such different codes depending on the function *f*.

EXERCISE 2.30 Find an example of an (x, \in) which is not extensional. If we nevertheless apply the Mostowski-Shepherdson Collapse function π to it, what happens?

2.4 The H_{κ} sets

The following collects together sets whose transitive closure is of a certain maximal size. The phrase "hereditarily of [property φ]" means that not only must an x have property φ , but so must all its members, and their members, and .. and so on.

⁸³⁰ DEFINITION 2.30 Let κ be an infinite cardinal. $H_{\kappa} =_{df} \{x \mid |TC(x)| < \kappa\}$ is the class of sets hereditarily ⁸³¹ of cardinality less than κ .

⁸³² We summarise the properties of these classes.

- ⁸³³ LEMMA 2.31 Let κ be an infinite cardinal.
- (*i*) On \cap $H_{\kappa} = \kappa$; Trans (H_{κ}) ;
- (*ii*) $H_{\kappa} \subseteq V_{\kappa}$ and hence $H_{\kappa} \in V_{\kappa+1}$, $\rho(H_{\kappa}) = \kappa$;
- 836 (*iii*) $y \in H_{\kappa} \land x \subseteq y \longrightarrow x \in H_{\kappa}$;
- 837 (*iv*) $x, y \in H_{\kappa} \longrightarrow \bigcup x, \{x, y\} \in H_{\kappa};$
- $(v) (AC) \kappa regular \longrightarrow \forall x (x \in H_{\kappa} \leftrightarrow x \subseteq H_{\kappa} \land |x| < \kappa).$

PROOF: (i) Exercise; (ii): if $x \in H_{\kappa}$ we have $|TC(x)| < \kappa$; we use Ex.1.2: let $\theta = \rho^{\text{``TC}}(x)$, and as $\kappa \in \text{Card}$, we cannot have $\kappa \leq \theta$; hence $\rho(x) = \rho(TC(x)) \leq \theta < \kappa$ and thus $x \in V_{\theta+1}$. Thus $H_{\kappa} \subseteq V_{\kappa}$, thence $H_{\kappa} \in V_{\kappa+1}$; as $\kappa \subseteq H_{\kappa}$, we have $\rho(H_{\kappa}) \geq \kappa$. (ii) is completed.

EXERCISE 2.31 Prove (i), (iii)-(iv) here. Give an example to show that (v) fails if κ is singular.

(v) (\rightarrow) Assume $x \in H_{\kappa}$. As Trans $(H_{\kappa}) \land x \subseteq \text{TC}(x)$ this follows from the definition of H_{κ} . (\leftarrow) As TC $(x) = x \cup \bigcup \{\text{TC}(y) \mid y \in x\}$, it is the union of less than κ many sets all of cardinality less than κ . By AC such a union has itself cardinality less than κ so we are done. Q.E.D.

LEMMA 2.32 (AC) $\kappa > \omega \land \kappa$ regular $\longrightarrow (ZFC^{-})^{H_{\kappa}}$. More formally: let $\overrightarrow{\varphi}$ be a finite list of axioms from 2FC⁻. Then ZFC \vdash " $\kappa > \omega \land \kappa$ regular $\longrightarrow (\bigwedge \overrightarrow{\varphi})^{H_{\kappa}}$."

PROOF: We appeal to Lemma 1.26 once we have observed that Separation, Replacement, and Choice 848 axioms hold relativised to H_{κ} , the others follow from Lemma 2.31. (AxSeparation)^{H_{κ}} holds since if $a^{H_{\kappa}}$ 849 is any term, and $x \in H_{\kappa}$ then $y = a^{H_{\kappa}} \cap x$ is a subset of x and hence it satisfies $|TC(y)| < \kappa$ also. Similarly, 850 for the Axiom of Collection, if (r is a relation $\wedge \forall xr^*x \neq \emptyset$)^{H_k} then let s be the function (defined in V) 851 given by $sx = y \leftrightarrow (r(x, y) \land x, y \in H_{\kappa} \land \forall z < y \neg r(x, z)) \lor (x \notin H_{\kappa} \land y = \emptyset)$ where $\langle H_{\kappa}, \langle \rangle \in WO$ 852 for some wellorder \prec . Then letting $w \in H_{\kappa}$ be arbitrary, and applying Replacement (again in V) we 853 deduce that $s^{*}w \in V$. However $s^{*}w \subseteq H_{\kappa}$ and has at most $|w| < \kappa$ many elements. Hence setting 854 $t = s^{*}w$ we have $t \in H_{\kappa}$ as required. For $(AC)^{H_{\kappa}}$ let $f \in H_{\kappa}$. In particular dom $(f) \in H_{\kappa}$. Assume 855 $\forall x \in \text{dom}(f)f(x) \neq \emptyset$. By AC we have $g \in \prod f$. It is an exercise to check that any such g satisfies 856 $TC(g) \subseteq TC(f)$ hence $g \in H_{\kappa}$. Q.E.D. 857 We remark also that the last lemma is false for singular cardinals κ . 858

859

860

2.4.1 H_{ω} - the hereditarily finite sets

For $\kappa = \omega$ then H_{κ} is known as the class of the *hereditarily finite* sets - and is so also more usually abbreviated as HF.

EXERCISE 2.32 Show that $V_{\omega} =$ HF. [Hint: For (\subseteq) use induction on *n* to show $V_n \subseteq$ HF. For (\supseteq) use \in induction].

- ⁸⁶⁵ Lemma 2.33 (ZFC Ax . Inf +¬ Ax . Inf)^{HF}
- 866 PROOF: See Exercise.

Q.E.D.



Andrzej Mostowski 1913-1975

- EXERCISE 2.33 Check that HF is closed under all the assumptions of Lemmata 1.24 and 1.25 (except 1.24 (ii)) and even the power set operation. Hence $(ZFC - Ax . Inf)^{HF}$.
- EXERCISE 2.34 (Ackermann 1937) Investigate the following function $f : \text{HF} \to \omega$: $f(x) = \sum_{y \in x} 2^{f(y)}$.

870

2.4.2 H_{ω_1} - The hereditarily countable sets

The class H_{ω_1} is also known as the class of sets *hereditarily of countable cardinality*, and so also is given the abbreviation of HC. $\mathcal{P}(\omega) \subseteq$ HC and hence we regard the real continuum as a subclass of HC. At least in one crude sense, HC "is" $\mathcal{P}(\omega)$, see the following Exercise.

EXERCISE 2.35 If $x \in HC$ then we have $|TC(x)| \le \omega$. Define a wellfounded extensional relation E on ω so that $\langle \omega, E \rangle \cong \langle TC(x), \epsilon \rangle$. [Hint: We have a bijection $f : N \leftrightarrow TC(x)$ for some $N \le \omega$; define $nEm \leftrightarrow f(n) \in f(m)$.] If we use a recursive pairing bijection $p : \omega \leftrightarrow \omega \times \omega$ (for example $p^{-1}(\langle k, l \rangle) = 2^k \cdot (2l+1) - 1$) we may further code E as a subset $\overline{E} \subseteq \omega$. We thus have effectively coded up TC(x) as a subset of ω .] (By using further such coding devices we may take any countable structure with domain in HC and code it up as a subset of ω . In this sense to study all countable structures is to study all of $\mathcal{P}(\omega)$.)

However unlike the case of ω and HF, we cannot identify HC with any V_{α} : $V_{\omega+1} \supseteq \mathcal{P}(\omega)$ but $V_{\omega+1}$ does not contain any countable ordinal $\alpha > \omega + 1$. But $\omega_1 \subseteq$ HC as can be easily determined from its definition. On the other hand $|V_{\omega+2}| = |\mathcal{PP}(\omega)| = 2^{2^{\omega}} > 2^{\omega} = |\text{HC}|$ so $V_{\omega+2} \notin$ HC. Clearly then HC is not closed under the power set operation but we do have that all other ZF axioms hold there:

884 LEMMA 2.34 (ZF⁻)^{HC}.

PROOF: As HC = H_{ω_1} this is just a case of Lemma 2.32.

Q.E.D.

EXERCISE 2.36 Which axioms of ZF hold in V_{α} if $Lim(\alpha)$? Find a wellordering $\langle A, R \rangle \in V_{\omega+\omega}$ but for which there is no ordinal $\beta \in V_{\omega+\omega}$ with $\langle A, R \rangle \cong \langle \beta, < \rangle$; hence find an instance of the Ax.Replacement that fails in $V_{\omega+\omega}$. [The latter is a model of Z, the axiom system of Zermelo which is ZF with Replacement removed. For almost all regions of mathematical discourse, $V_{\omega+\omega}$ is a sufficiently large "universe" - mathematicians never, or rarely, need sets outside of this set.]

⁸⁹¹ How large is H_{κ} ? This depends again on the power set operation on sets of ordinals. Every element ⁸⁹² of H_{κ^+} can be coded as a subset of κ . See the next exercise which just mirrors the argument of Ex.2.35.

EXERCISE 2.37 *¹ Extend Ex. 2.35 to any H_{κ^+} . [Hint: let p now be any pairing bijection $p : \kappa \leftrightarrow \kappa \times \kappa$. Assume $f : \kappa \leftrightarrow \text{TC}(x)$ and put $\alpha E_0\beta$ if $f(\alpha) \in f(\beta)$. Then by the Collapsing Lemma $\langle \kappa, E_0 \rangle \cong \langle \text{TC}(x), \epsilon \rangle$. Let $E = p^{-1} E_0$. Then any structure with domain in H_{κ^+} can be coded by a subset of $E \subseteq \kappa$.] Deduce that $|H_{\kappa^+}| = |\mathcal{P}(\kappa)|$.

⁸⁹⁶ We adopt the notation: For κ , $\lambda \in Card$, $\kappa^{<\lambda} =_{df} \sup \{ \kappa^{\mu} \mid \mu \in Card \land \mu < \lambda \}.$

EXERCISE 2.38 Let $\kappa \in \text{Card}$. Show that $|H_{\kappa}| = 2^{<\kappa}$. [Hint: for κ a successor cardinal, this is the last Exercise.]

EXERCISE 2.39 (Levy) Let $h(\kappa)$ be the class of sets x with (i) $\forall y \in \text{TC}(x)(|y| < \kappa)$, (ii) $|x| < \kappa$. Show that if $\kappa \in \text{Reg}$, then $H_{\kappa} = h(\kappa)$; find an example where this fails if κ is singular.

900

2.5 THE MONTAGUE-LEVY REFLECTION THEOREM

This section proves a *Reflection Theorem*, so called because it shows that in ZF we can prove that the fact of any sentence φ holding in V is reflected by an initial portion of the universe: we shall see that $\varphi \leftrightarrow \varphi^{V_{\alpha}}$ for some α . However these arguments are of more interest than just as a means to solving this problem.

We shall be able to prove from this theorem that any *finite* collection *S* of the ZF (or ZFC) axioms can be shown to hold in a transitive set; indeed we shall see that we can always find a level of the cumulative hierarchy, a V_{α} , in which *S* is true: $ZF \vdash \exists \alpha(S)^{V_{\alpha}}$. Of course we have just seen that all of ZF^- is true in any H_{κ^+} . If our finite list contains the Ax.Power then Reflection arguments provide a solution. From this we shall be able to see later that ZFC is not *finitely axiomatisable*: there is no finite set of axioms *S* that have the same deductive consequences as those of ZFC.

2.5.1 Absoluteness

DEFINITION 2.35 Let $W \subseteq Z$ be class terms. Let $\varphi \in \mathcal{L}_{\in}$ with $FVbl\{\varphi\} \subseteq \{\vec{x}\}$.

(*i*)
$$\varphi$$
 is upward absolute for W, Z iff $\forall \vec{x} \in W(\varphi^W \longrightarrow \varphi^Z)$;

(i) φ is downward absolute for W, Z iff $\forall \vec{x} \in W(\varphi^W \leftarrow \varphi^Z)$;

(*iii*) φ *is* absolute for W, Z if both (i) and (ii) hold: $\forall \vec{x} \in W(\varphi^W \leftrightarrow \varphi^Z)$

If Z = V then we omit it, and simply say " φ is upward absolute for W" etc. If $\vec{\varphi} = \varphi_1, \ldots, \varphi_n$ is a finite list of formulae then we say that $\vec{\varphi} = \varphi_1, \ldots, \varphi_n$ are upward absolute (etc.) if their conjunction $\varphi_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge \varphi_n$ is.

¹An Exercise annotated with a * indicates that is perhaps harder than usual. An (E) indicates that it is *Extra* to the course.

DEFINITION 2.36 Given classes $W \subseteq Z$ and a term t we say t is absolute for W, Z iff $\forall \vec{x} \in W(t(\vec{x})^W \in W \leftrightarrow t(\vec{x})^Z \in Z \land t(\vec{x})^Z = t(\vec{x})^W)$

(Recall that asserting $t(\vec{x})^Z \in Z$ is to assert that $t(\vec{x})^Z$ is a set of Z. Note we could have defined 'upwards' and 'downwards' absoluteness for terms t as well.) A standard example of a term that is not absolute is given by "the first uncountable cardinal" ($t = \{\alpha \in \text{On} \mid \alpha \text{ is countable }\}$). Suppose $W \subseteq V$. Certainly $t^V = t$ is defined: it is ω_1 . It may be that t^W is defined, and is a cardinal in W. But V may simply have more onto functions f with dom $(f) = \omega$ and ran $(f) \subseteq \text{On}$, than W has. We may thus have $t^W < t^V$. Another example is given by $t = \mathcal{P}(\omega)$.

⁹²⁷ DEFINITION 2.37 A list of formulae $\vec{\varphi} = \varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_n$ is subformula closed iff every subformula of a formula ⁹²⁸ is on the list.

The following establishes a criterion for when a formula's truth value is identical in different class terms.

⁹³¹ LEMMA 2.38 Let $\vec{\varphi}$ be a subformula closed list. Let $W \subseteq Z$ be terms. The following are equivalent:

932 (i) $\overrightarrow{\varphi}$ are absolute for W, Z.;

(ii) whenever φ_i is of the form $\exists x \varphi_j(x, \vec{y})$ (with $FVbl(\varphi_i) \subseteq \{\vec{y}\}$) it satisfies the Tarski-Vaught criterion between W and Z:

935
$$\forall \vec{y} \in W[\exists x \in Z\varphi_j(x, \vec{y})^Z \longrightarrow \exists x \in W\varphi_j(x, \vec{y})^Z].$$

PROOF: (i) \Rightarrow (ii): Fix $\vec{y} \in W$ and assume $\varphi_i(\vec{y})^Z \equiv \exists x \in Z\varphi_j(x, \vec{y})^Z$. By absoluteness of $\varphi_i, \varphi_i(\vec{y})^W$, so $\exists x \in W\varphi_j(x, \vec{y})^W$ and by absoluteness $\varphi_j, \varphi_j(x, \vec{y})^Z$, so $\exists x \in W\varphi_j(x, \vec{y})^Z$.

(ii) \Rightarrow (i): By induction on the length of φ_i : we thus assume absoluteness checked for all φ_j on the list for shorter length, in particular for any subformula of φ_i .

940 φ_i *atomic*: absolute by definition.

 $\varphi_i \equiv \varphi_j \lor \varphi_k$: then φ_i is absolute since both φ_j and φ_k are by inductive hypothesis.

942 $\varphi_i \equiv \neg \varphi_i$: similar;

943 $\varphi_i \equiv \exists x \varphi_j(x, \vec{y}). \text{ So fix } \vec{y} \in W.$

$$\varphi_i(\vec{y})^W \leftrightarrow \exists x \in W \varphi_j(x, \vec{y})^W \leftrightarrow \exists x \in Z \varphi_j(x, \vec{y})^Z \leftrightarrow \varphi_i(\vec{y})^Z$$

Where : the first and last equivalence is just the definition of relativisation; the second equivalence - from left to right uses the absoluteness of φ_j from the Ind.Hyp., and the fact that $W \subseteq Z$; and from right to left uses Assumption (ii) and again the absoluteness of φ_j from the Ind. Hyp.; and the last is relativisation again. Q.E.D.

```
<sup>948</sup> LEMMA 2.39 Let W be a transitive class term. Then any \Delta_0-formula \varphi is absolute for W.
```

PROOF: Let φ be Δ_0 and apply the last argument (with $\vec{\varphi}$ the list of φ together with all it subformulae).

⁹⁵⁰ The point here is that Trans(*W*) so *W* knows the full \in -relationship on its members. As any Δ_0 -formula

only contains bounded quantifiers, this is enough to satisfy the criterion of 2.38 when one comes to the

induction step $\varphi \equiv \exists x \in y\psi$ where ψ is Δ_0 itself, in the induction at the end of the last proof.

EXERCISE 2.40 Fill in the details. [Hint: by what has just been said, only the $\varphi \equiv \exists x \in y\psi$ step and the last chain 953 of equivalences needs to be argued.] 954

EXERCISE 2.41 Let W be a transitive class term. Then (i) any Σ_1 -formula φ is upwards absolute for W; (ii) any 955 Π_1 -formula φ is downwards absolute for W. 956

Reflection Theorems 2.5.2

We use the last criterion of absoluteness in our Reflection Theorems. the first lemma really contains the 958 essence of the argument. 959

LEMMA 2.40 Let Z be a class term, and suppose we have a function F_Z with $F_Z(\alpha) = Z_\alpha$ so that $\forall \alpha (Z_\alpha \in$ 960 *V*). Assume (i) $\alpha < \beta \longrightarrow Z_{\alpha} \subseteq Z_{\beta}$; 961

979

983

957

(*ii*) $\operatorname{Lim}(\lambda) \longrightarrow Z_{\lambda} = \bigcup_{\alpha \in \lambda} Z_{\alpha}$; (*iii*) $Z = \bigcup_{\alpha \in \text{On}} Z_{\alpha}$. Then for any $\overrightarrow{\varphi} = \varphi_0, \dots, \varphi_n$: 963 $ZF \vdash \forall \alpha \exists \beta > \alpha (\overrightarrow{\varphi} \text{ are absolute for } Z_{\beta}, Z).$ (*)964

Note: Formally here we are saying that if we have a term for Z and a term for the function F_Z , and 965 we can prove in ZF that F_Z has properties (i) - (iii), then for any $\vec{\varphi}$, there is a proof in ZF of (*). We are 966 *not* saying that in $ZF \vdash \forall \vec{\varphi}((*))$ *holds*". (Assertions such as the latter we shall see later are false.) 967

PROOF: We apply Lemma 2.38 and try and find some $W = Z_{\beta}$ such that (ii) of the lemma applies. This 968 will suffice. By lengthening the list if need be we shall assume that $\vec{\varphi}$ is subformula closed. For $i \leq n$ we 969 define functions F_i : On \longrightarrow On. If $\varphi_i \equiv \exists x \varphi_i(x, \vec{y})$ set: 970

 $G_i(\vec{y}) = 0$ if $\neg \exists x \in Z\varphi_i(x, \vec{y})$ 971

= η where η is least so that $\exists x \in Z_{\eta}\varphi_{i}(x, \vec{y})$. 972

973
$$F_i(\xi) = \sup\{G_i(\vec{y}) \mid \vec{y} \in Z_{\xi}\}$$

Note that G_i is a well defined function, and consequently so is F_i : $G_i Z_{\xi} \in V$ by AxReplacement; 974 hence $F_i(\xi) = \sup G_i Z_{\xi}$ is then a well defined term. Note also that each F_i is monotonic: $\zeta < \xi \longrightarrow$ 975 $F_i(\zeta) \leq F_i(\xi)$. If φ_i is not of the above form, set $F_i(\xi) = 0$ everywhere. 976

Claim: $\forall \alpha \exists \beta > \alpha(\text{Lim}(\beta) \land \forall \xi < \beta \forall i \le nF_i(\xi) < \beta).$ 977

Proof of Claim: Define by recursion on ω : $\lambda_0 = \alpha$; 978

 $\lambda_{k+1} = \max\{\lambda_k + 1, F_0(\lambda_k), \dots, F_n(\lambda_k)\}; \beta = \sup_k \lambda_k.$

Then $\lambda_k < \lambda_{k+1}$ implies that $\text{Lim}(\beta)$. Hence if $\tau < \beta$ then $\tau < \lambda_k$ for some $k \in \omega$. Hence $F_i(\tau) \leq \beta$ 980 $F_i(\lambda_k) \leq \lambda_{k+1} < \beta.$ Q.E.D.(Claim) 981 Now that the Claim is proven, then we may verify the Lemma with such a β for Z_{β} and Z. 982

Q.E.D.

EXERCISE 2.42 Carry out this final verification. 984

We may immediately set Z to be V and Z_{α} to be V_{α} and obtain the immediate corollary: 985

THEOREM 2.41 (Montague-Levy) The Reflection Theorem. Let $\vec{\varphi}$ be any finite list of formulae of \mathcal{L} . 986 Then 987

$$2F \vdash \forall \alpha \exists \beta > \alpha (\overrightarrow{\varphi} \text{ are absolute for } V_{\beta}).$$
 Q.E.D.
As cautioned above, this is a *theorem scheme* again: it is one theorem of ZF for each choice of $\vec{\varphi}$. Notice that if in particular $\vec{\varphi}$ are sentences, we may write the conclusion as:

⁹⁹¹ $ZF \vdash \forall \alpha \exists \beta > \alpha (\overrightarrow{\varphi} \longleftrightarrow (\overrightarrow{\varphi})^{V_{\beta}}).$

Moreover if the $\vec{\varphi}$ are *axioms* of ZF we have that they are true in V. In this case we may write: $ZF \vdash \forall \alpha \exists \beta > \alpha ((M \vec{\varphi})^{V_{\beta}}).$

In other words: for any finite list of ZF we can find arbitrarily large β so that those axioms hold in V_{β} . We can state something stronger:

⁹⁹⁶ COROLLARY 2.42 Let T be any set of axioms in \mathcal{L} extending ZF, and $\vec{\varphi}$ a finite list of axioms from T. Then ⁹⁹⁷ $T \vdash \forall \alpha \exists \beta > \alpha ((M \vec{\varphi})^{V_{\beta}}).$

PROOF: Since *T* extends ZF *T* proves the existence of the V_{α} hierarchy, and $T \vdash \varphi_i$ for each φ_i from $\vec{\varphi}$. Hence $T \vdash \bigwedge \vec{\varphi}$ trivially. And $T \vdash \forall \alpha \exists \beta > \alpha (\bigwedge \vec{\varphi} \longleftrightarrow (\bigwedge \vec{\varphi})^{V_{\beta}})$ Q.E.D.

At first blush it might look as if the restriction to finite lists of $\vec{\varphi}$ is unnecessary. Why could we 1000 not look at a recursive enumeration φ_i of all axioms of ZF say, and find some V_{α} in which they were all 1001 true? We know from the Gödel Second Incompleteness Theorem that there is no way to formalise that 1002 argument within ZF, since it would be tantamount to proving the existence of a model of the ZF axioms, 1003 and hence the *consistency* of ZF. So what goes wrong? Lemma 2.40 can only work for finite lists $\vec{\varphi}$: the 1004 statement " $\vec{\varphi}$ are absolute for Z_{β}, Z " involves a conjunction of the formulae from the list: we cannot 1005 write an infinitely long formula in \mathcal{L} , so we have no way of even expressing the absoluteness of such an 1006 infinite list. Another paraphrase on this is in the following Exercise. 1007

1008 EXERCISE 2.43 Show that for every formula φ of \mathcal{L} :

¹⁰⁰⁹ ZF ⊢ "There is a c.u.b. class $C \subseteq$ On so that $\forall \alpha \in C \forall \vec{x} \in V_{\alpha}(\varphi(\vec{x}) \leftrightarrow (\varphi(\vec{x}))^{V_{\alpha}})$ "

[Hint: The reasoning of Lemma 2.40 pretty much gives the relevant cub class as the closure points of the $F_{i.}$] Remark: One might think that one could enumerate all the axioms of ZF $\varphi_0, \varphi_1, \ldots$, find the appropriate classes C_{φ_n} and take $D = \bigcap_n C_{\varphi_n}$. This appears then to be an intersection of only countable many c.u.b. classes and so must be c.u.b. in On? But for any element $\alpha \in D$ we'd have $(ZF)^{V_{\alpha}}$, and we appear to have proven the existence of models of ZF - contradicting Gödel. What is wrong with this reasoning?

EXERCISE 2.44 Find a sentence σ so that if σ is absolute for V_{α} then α is a limit ordinal. Repeat the exercise and find τ so that if τ is absolute for V_{β} then $\beta = \omega_{\beta}$ (the β 'th infinite cardinal). [Hint: consider the statement: "For every $\beta \omega_{\beta}$ exists".]

As the last exercise shows, if we insist on finding a V_{α} which is absolute for any particular sentence, then we may need to find a very large α for this to happen. If we are content to merely find *a set* for which a formula is absolute, we can find a countable such set. More generally:

LEMMA 2.43 Let Z be a term, and $\vec{\varphi}$ be any finite list of formulae of \mathcal{L} . Then $ZFC \vdash \forall x \subseteq Z \exists y [x \subseteq y \subseteq Z \land \vec{\varphi} \text{ are absolute for } y, Z \land |y| \leq \max\{\omega, |x|\}].$

PROOF: We define from the term *Z* the term giving the function $F(\alpha) = Z \cap V_{\alpha}$ which we shall call Z_{α} . Again assume that $\vec{\varphi}$ is subformula closed. As *x* is a set, by the AxReplacement $G^{*}x \in V$ where $G(u) =_{df}$ the least α such that $u \in Z_{\alpha}$. Then $\sup G^{*}x = \bigcup G^{*}x \in V$. Call this ordinal β_{0} . By Lemma 2.40 find $\beta > \beta_{0}$ with $\vec{\varphi}$ absolute for Z_{β} , *Z*. By AC fix a wellorder \triangleleft of Z_{β} . Without loss of generality we assume $\emptyset \in Z_{\beta}$. If φ_i is of the form $\exists x \varphi_j(x, y_1, \dots, y_{k_j})$ (with $FVbl(\varphi_i) = \{\vec{y}\}$) we define a function $G_i : {}^{k_j}Z_{\beta} \longrightarrow Z_{\beta}$ by the following clauses:

1029 $h_i(\vec{y}) = \text{the } \triangleleft \text{-least } x \in Z_\beta \text{ so that } \varphi_j(x, y_1, \dots, y_{k_j})^{Z_\beta} \text{ if such exists}$ 1030 $= \emptyset \text{ otherwise.}$

We also set h_i to be the constant \emptyset -function in the cases that φ_i is not of the above form, or that φ_i has no free variables. With h_i now defined in every case, we look for the least set y closed under the h_i . We can find such a y by repeatedly closing under the finitary functions h_i , and obtain a y with cardinality no greater than max{ $\omega, |X|$ } (see Exercise). We can then appeal to the criterion in Lemma 2.38, which asserts in this case that $\vec{\varphi}$ is absolute for y, Z_β . But $\vec{\varphi}$ is absolute for Z_β, Z , and thus the Lemma is proven. Q.E.D.

EXERCISE 2.45 Let x be any set, and $f_i : {}^{n_i}V \longrightarrow V$ for $i < \omega$ be any collection of finitary functions (meaning that $n_i < \omega$); show that there is a $y \supseteq x$ which is closed under each of the f_i (thus $f_i : {}^{n_i}y \subseteq y$ for each i) and $|y| \le \max\{\omega, |x|\}$. [Hint: no need for a formal argument here: build up a y in ω many stages $y_k \subseteq y_{k+1}$ at each step applying all the f_i .]

The last lemma then says that, *e.g.*, if φ were a finite list of axioms of ZFC, and $x = \emptyset$, then $\langle y, \in \rangle$ would be a countable structure in which those axioms were true.

Returning to our reflection results, we may apply the above to obtain corollaries to Lemma 2.43.

COROLLARY 2.44 Let Z be a term, and $\vec{\varphi}$ be any finite list of formulae of \mathcal{L} . Then

 $ZFC \vdash \forall x \subseteq Z[Trans(x) \longrightarrow \exists w [x \subseteq w \land \overrightarrow{\varphi} \text{ are absolute for } w, Z \land |w| \le \max\{\omega, |x|\}]$

PROOF: We directly apply the Mostowski-Shepherdson Collapsing Lemma to the set *y* appearing in the statement of Lemma 2.43, thereby collapsing it to the transitive *w* here. As $\langle w, \in \rangle \cong \langle y, \in \rangle$ we have $\varphi(\vec{v})^y \leftrightarrow \varphi(\pi(\vec{v}))^w$. Hence $\vec{\varphi}$ are absolute for *w*, *Z*. Obviously |y| = |w|. Q.E.D. In the special case that Z = V and $x = \omega$ in the above we may get:

COROLLARY 2.45 Let T be any set of axioms in \mathcal{L} extending ZFC, and $\vec{\varphi}$ a finite list from T, then

 $T \vdash \exists y [\operatorname{Trans}(y) \land |y| = \omega \land \bigwedge (\overrightarrow{\varphi})^{y}].$

Thus we can find for any finite set of ZFC axioms a countable transitive set model in which all those axioms come out true. Again the finiteness of $\vec{\varphi}$ is necessary.

1050

2.6 INACCESSIBLE CARDINALS

¹⁰⁵¹ We shall encounter in this section an example of a 'large cardinal': this is a cardinal whose existence does ¹⁰⁵² not follow from the axioms of ZFC. In general this is because such cardinals allow one to conclude that ¹⁰⁵³ there are structures (typically V_{κ} where κ is the cardinal number under consideration) in which all the ¹⁰⁵⁴ ZFC axioms are true. If ZFC could prove the existence of such a κ then this would contradict the Gödel ¹⁰⁵⁵ Second Incompleteness Theorem. From these further large cardinals can be defined, and although we ¹⁰⁵⁶ give the briefest of illustrative examples, it is not the intention of the course to go down this route, rich ¹⁰⁵⁷ as it is. 1058

2.6.1 INACCESSIBLE CARDINALS

1059 DEFINITION 2.46 A cardinal $\kappa > \omega$ is a strong limit cardinal, if for any $\alpha < \kappa \longrightarrow 2^{|\alpha|} < \kappa$.

1060 DEFINITION 2.47 A regular cardinal $\kappa > \omega$ is

1061 *(i)* weakly inaccessible *if it is a limit cardinal (Hausdorff 1908)*;

(*ii*) (Sierpinski-Tarski (1930); Zermelo (1930)) strongly inaccessible *if in addition it is a strong limit cardinal.*

The idea behind the nomenclature is that an accessible cardinal κ is one that can be reached from below by either the successor cardinal operation, or else the power set operation, as per Note (1) that follows.

¹⁰⁶⁷ Notes (1) Another way of putting this is to say that a cardinal κ is weakly inaccessible if it is (a) regular ¹⁰⁶⁸ and (b) $\alpha < \kappa \longrightarrow \alpha^+ < \kappa$. It is (strongly) inaccessible if it is both (a) regular and (c) $\alpha < \kappa \longrightarrow |\mathcal{P}(\alpha)| <$ ¹⁰⁶⁹ κ .

1070 (2) The word 'strongly' is often omitted.

(3) If the GCH holds then the two notions coincide (for the simple reason that GCH $\rightarrow 2^{|\alpha|} = 1072$ $|\mathcal{P}(\alpha)| = \alpha^+ < \kappa!$).

¹⁰⁷³ (4) The least strong limit cardinal is singular of cofinality ω (Check!) In particular if GCH holds then ¹⁰⁷⁴ \aleph_{ω} is the least strong limit cardinal.

1075 LEMMA 2.48 (AC) Let $\omega < \kappa \in \text{Reg.}$ The following are equivalent:

1076 (i) κ is strongly inaccessible; 1077 (ii) $V_{\kappa} = H_{\kappa}$;

1078 (*iii*) $(ZFC)^{H_{\kappa}}$;

1079 $(iv) \kappa = \beth_{\kappa}.$

PROOF: (*i*) \Rightarrow (*ii*). Since $\kappa \in \text{Card}$, we have $H_{\kappa} \subseteq V_{\kappa}$ (Lemma 2.31(ii)). But $x \in V_{\kappa} \Rightarrow \exists \alpha < \kappa (x \in V_{\alpha})$. By induction on $\alpha < \kappa$ one shows that $|V_{\alpha}| < \kappa$: suppose true for $\beta < \alpha$: then $V_{\alpha} = \mathcal{P}(V_{\beta})$ if $\alpha = \beta + 1$, and as $|V_{\beta}| < \kappa$, then $|\mathcal{P}(V_{\beta})| = |2^{|V_{\beta}|}| < \kappa$ as κ is strongly inaccessible; if $\text{Lim}(\alpha)$ then V_{α} is the union of less than κ many sets of size less than κ , and hence has cardinality less than κ . Hence, in either case V_{α} is a transitive set of size less than κ . Hence it is in H_{κ} .

¹⁰⁸⁵ (*ii*) \Rightarrow (*iii*). We have already that (ZFC⁻)^{*H*_{*κ*}} (by Lemma 2.32). Only Ax.Power is missing. But ¹⁰⁸⁶ (Ax. Power)^{*V*_λ} for any limit ordinal λ , and hence in particular for $\lambda = \kappa$.</sup>

(*iii*) \Rightarrow (*iv*). We prove by induction that $\alpha < \kappa \longrightarrow \exists_{\alpha} < \kappa$. This suffices. Assume true for $\beta < \alpha$. If $\alpha = \beta + 1$ then $2^{\exists_{\beta}} = \exists_{\alpha}$. But $(AxPower + AC)^{H_{\kappa}}$, hence $(\exists \tau \in On(\tau \approx \mathcal{P}(\exists_{\beta}))^{H_{\kappa}})$. So $2^{\exists_{\beta}} = |\mathcal{P}(\exists_{\beta})| \le \tau < \kappa$. If $Lim(\alpha)$ then $\exists_{\alpha} < \kappa$ by the inductive hypothesis and the regularity of κ .

 $(iv) \Rightarrow (i)$. Recall that $|V_{\omega+\alpha}| = \exists_{\alpha}$ (Ex. 2.9). Our assumption yields that

$$\omega^2 \le \alpha < \kappa \longrightarrow 2^{|\alpha|} =_{\mathrm{df}} |\mathcal{P}(\alpha)| \le |V_{\alpha+1}| = \exists_{\alpha+1} < \kappa$$

¹⁰⁹⁰ as required for strong inaccessibility.

1091 EXERCISE 2.46 Verify that κ is weakly inaccessible iff κ is regular and $\kappa = \aleph_{\kappa}$.

35

Q.E.D.

- 1092 EXERCISE 2.47 Does $\kappa > \omega \land V_{\kappa} = H_{\kappa}$ imply that κ is strongly inaccessible?
- ¹⁰⁹³ DEFINITION 2.49 (Mahlo 1911) A regular limit cardinal κ is called a weakly Mahlo cardinal in case Reg $\cap \kappa$ ¹⁰⁹⁴ is stationary below κ . κ is called (strongly) Mahlo if it is both weakly Mahlo and strongly inaccessible.

LEMMA 2.50 If κ is weakly Mahlo then in fact κ is the κ 'th weakly inaccessible cardinal, and the class of weakly inaccessible cardinals below κ is stationary below κ . The same sentence is true with 'strongly' replacing 'weakly' throughout.

PROOF: As $\text{Reg} \cap \kappa$ is unbounded in κ , $(\text{Reg} \cap \kappa)^*$ is c.u.b. below κ . But such are all limit cardinals. As Reg $\cap \kappa$ is moreover stationary below κ , $D =_{df} (\text{Reg} \cap \kappa) \cap (\text{Reg} \cap \kappa)^*$ is stationary below κ (see Ex.2.13). But all members of D are then weakly inaccessible cardinals. Q.E.D.

EXERCISE 2.48 Let λ be the least weakly inaccessible cardinal which is itself a limit of weakly inaccessible cardinals (meaning the weakly inaccessibles below λ are unbounded in λ). Show that λ is not weakly Mahlo. The same sentence is true with 'strongly' replacing 'weakly' throughout.

2.6.2 A menagerie of other large cardinals

¹¹⁰⁵ We briefly consider some other notions of "large cardinal" stronger than Mahlo. (For a full account see ¹¹⁰⁶ Drake [2], Devlin [1], Jech [3].) We do this to give some flavour to the rich structure of even the so-called ¹¹⁰⁷ small large cardinals. They are called 'small' because, if they are consistent, then they are consistent with ¹¹⁰⁸ the statement that "V = L" - they can thus potentially be exemplified in *L*. Several depend upon the ¹¹⁰⁹ notion of a *homogeneous set* for a certain kind of function.

```
1110 DEFINITION 2.51 (i) [\kappa]^n denotes the set of all n element subsets of \kappa.
```

1111 (*ii*) $[\kappa]^{<\omega}$ denotes the set of all finite subsets of κ

1112 DEFINITION 2.52 $H \subseteq \kappa$ is homogeneous for $f : [\kappa]^n \longrightarrow \lambda \iff_{df} |f^{"}[H]^n| = 1$.

A homogeneous set is one therefore that every *n*-tuple there from gets sent by *f* to the same ordinal $\xi < \lambda$. Often in applications $\lambda = 2 = \{0, 1\}$ so we can think of *f* as partition of $[\kappa]^n$ into two colours. If *H* is homogeneous, then this means that all *n*-tuples from *H* are assigned the same colour. For λ colours the same applies. If a longer order type is specified on *H* then the harder it is to find such homogeneous sets. Large cardinals can then be specified by putting requirements on *H* and so forth as in the next two definitions.

DEFINITION 2.53 A cardinal κ is weakly compact if for every $f : [\kappa]^2 \longrightarrow 2$ there is a homogeneous subset H $\subseteq \kappa$ with H unbounded in κ .

1121 DEFINITION 2.54 (Jensen) A cardinal κ is ineffable if for every $f : [\kappa]^2 \longrightarrow 2$ there is a homogeneous 1122 subset $H \subseteq \kappa$ with H stationary in κ .

¹¹²³ By themselves the bare definitions may not mean too much. We give some equivalent formulations.

1104

DEFINITION 2.55 (*i*) A tree $\langle T, <_T \rangle$ is a wellfounded partial ordering so that for any $s \in T$, $\{s_0 \in T \mid s_0 <_T$ s} is linearly ordered.

(*ii*) A branch through a tree T is a maximal linearly ordered set;

1127 (iii) $T_{\alpha} =_{df} \{s \in T \mid \operatorname{rank}_T(s) = \alpha\}$ is the set of elements of the tree of tree-rank or 'level' α .

1128 A tree thus looks how it sounds.

DEFINITION 2.56 Let us say that a cardinal κ has the tree property iff for every tree $T = \langle \kappa, <_T \rangle$ with $\forall \alpha < \kappa(|T_{\alpha}| < \kappa)$ has a branch of order type κ .

There is no reason for a cardinal in general to satisfy the tree property. For example on ω_1 it may be the case that there is an uncountable tree $T = \langle \omega_1, <_T \rangle$, with field ω_1 , with all levels T_{α} countable, yet without any branch of cardinality ω_1 . (Such trees are called *Aronszajn trees*.) However the König Tree Lemma shows that ω_0 has the tree property.

1135 LEMMA 2.57 For a cardinal κ the following are equivalent:

(*i*) κ *is strongly inaccessible and satisfies the tree property;*

1137 (ii) κ is weakly compact;

(*iii*) for every $A \subseteq \kappa$ there is a transitive M, and a B, j with $j : \langle V_{\kappa}, \in, A \rangle \longrightarrow \langle M, \in, B \rangle$ an elementary embedding with $j \upharpoonright \kappa = id \upharpoonright \kappa$ and $j(\kappa) > \kappa$.

There are many further characterisations of weakly compact. See Jech, Drake. One property of weakly compact cardinals is that every stationary subset of κ reflects this property below κ , as in the following Exercise.

EXERCISE 2.49 (*) Let κ be weakly compact. Show that for any stationary subset $S \subseteq \kappa$, there is $\lambda < \kappa$ so that $S \cap \lambda$ is stationary in λ . [Hint: Use (iii) of the last lemma: suppose the conclusion fails; then there is $C_{\lambda} \subseteq \lambda$ with $C_{\lambda} \cap S \cap \lambda = \emptyset$ for every cardinal $\lambda < \kappa$. Let $A = \{\langle \xi, \lambda \rangle \mid \xi \in C_{\lambda}\} \cup S \times \{0\}$. Let j, M, B be as in (iii) above. Let $C_{\kappa} = \{\xi \mid \langle \xi, \kappa \rangle \in B\}$. By elementarity of the embedding j the following holds in $M : {}^{\circ}C_{\kappa}$ is c.u.b.in κ , whilst $C_{\kappa} \cap S \cap \kappa = \emptyset$. But $(S \cap \kappa)_M = S$ - so this is a contradiction.]

1148 DEFINITION 2.58 (Jensen) A cardinal κ is subtle iff

For any sequence $\langle A_{\alpha} | \alpha < \kappa \rangle$ with all $A_{\alpha} \subseteq \alpha$ and any c.u.b. $C \subseteq \kappa$, there is a pair of $\alpha, \beta \in C$ with $\alpha < \beta \land A_{\beta} \cap \alpha = A_{\alpha}$.

1151 LEMMA 2.59 (Jensen) For a cardinal κ the following are equivalent:

(*i*) κ is ineffable; (*ii*) for any sequence $\langle A_{\alpha} | \alpha < \kappa \rangle$ with all $A_{\alpha} \subseteq \alpha$ there is a set $E \subseteq \kappa$, so that

$$\{\alpha < \kappa \mid A_{\alpha} = E \cap \alpha\}$$
 is stationary.

1153 DEFINITION 2.60 A cardinal κ satisfies the partition relation $\kappa \longrightarrow (\gamma)_2^{<\omega} \iff_{df} for any f : [\kappa]^{<\omega} \longrightarrow 2$ 1154 there is an $H \subseteq \kappa$, ot $(H) \ge \gamma$, which is homogeneous for $f : [\kappa]^{<\omega} \longrightarrow \lambda$, namely for all $n < \omega$ — 1155 $f''[H]^n| = 1$.

The extra strength here is that f must assign the same colour to each n-tuple from H (although for 1156 a different $m \neq n$ a different colour may be chosen for all *m*-tuples from *H*). Such cardinals become 1157 rapidly stronger than those considered above, and quickly enter the realm of 'medium large cardinals'. 1158 This happens as soon as γ crosses the threshold from countable to uncountable. The cardinals here 1159 defined are in increasing strength, when measured in terms of where they are first exemplified in On: if 1160 κ is the least satisfying $\kappa \longrightarrow (\omega)_2^{<\omega}$ then κ is the κ 'th ineffable cardinal. Similar if κ is the first ineffable, 1161 it is the κ 'th subtle cardinal, and also the κ 'th weakly compact cardinal. If κ is the first weakly compact 1162 cardinal, then it is the κ 'th Mahlo cardinal. All the above are consistent with 'V = L'; not however the 1163 existence of a cardinal κ satisfying $\kappa \longrightarrow (\omega_1)_2^{<\omega}$: if such a cardinal exists we may prove that $V \neq L$. 1164

CHAPTER 3

Formalising semantics within ZF

The study of first order structures and the languages appropriate to them is the branch of mathematics called *model theory*. Like other parts of mathematics it can be formalised within set theory, and developed from the ZF axioms. Whereas most mathematicians would not be seeing any great advantage in having their area of mathematics in doing this, as set theorists we shall see that formalising that part of model theory that handles structures of the form $\langle X, \in \rangle$, (or of $\langle X, \in, A_1, \ldots, A_n \rangle$ where $A_i \subseteq X$), will be of immense utility. Amongst other results it is at the heart of Gödel's construction of the *constructible hierarchy*, *L*.

¹¹⁷⁴ We have defined the notion of absoluteness of formulae between structures or terms rather generally. ¹¹⁷⁵ However we have not been very specific about what kinds of concepts are actually absolute. We alluded ¹¹⁷⁶ to this problem at the end of Section 1.2, and in particular we noted the possible non-absoluteness of the ¹¹⁷⁷ power set operation. In general objects that have very simple definitions tend to be absolute for transitive ¹¹⁷⁸ sets and classes (thus \emptyset , {x, y}, ω , "f is a function", "x an ordinal") whilst more complex ones are not ¹¹⁷⁹ ($y = \mathcal{P}(x)$, "x is a cardinal").

1180

3.1 Definite terms and formulae

The *definite* terms and formulae are amongst those that we are interested in being absolute between transitive ZF⁻ models. We address the question of which terms and formulae defining concepts can be so absolute. We shall define "definite term (and formula)" first and later show that such have this degree of being "absolutely definite".

1185 DEFINITION 3.1 (Definite terms and formulae)

(A) We define the definite terms and formulae by a simultaneous induction on the complexity of formulae
 and of the terms' definition.

(*i*) Any atomic formula $x = y, x \in y$ is definite;

1189 *if* φ , ψ *are definite, then so are:* $\neg \varphi$; $(\varphi \lor \psi)$; $\exists y \in x\varphi$

(*ii*) Any variable x is a definite term. If s, t are definite terms, so are:

1191 $\bigcup s, \{s, t\}, s \setminus t.$

1165

1166

(iii) Suppose $t_0(x_1,...,x_n)$ and $t_1,...,t_n$ are definite terms. Then $t_0(t_1/x_1,...,t_n/x_n)$ is a definite term. If $\varphi(x_1,...,x_n)$ is a definite formula then so is $\varphi(t_1/x_1,...,t_n/x_n)$.

(iv) If $\varphi(x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_n)$ and t_1, \ldots, t_n are definite, then so are the terms:

$$y \cap \{x \mid \varphi(x, t_1/x_1, ..., t_n/x_n)\} \text{ and } \{t_1(y, x) \mid y \in z\}.$$

1194 $(v) \omega$.

1196

(vi) If t is definite, and Fun(t), then the canonical function term f given by the recursion

 $f(y, \vec{x}) = t(y, \vec{x}, \{f(z, \vec{x}) \mid z \in y\}) \text{ is definite.}$

¹¹⁹⁷ Note (1): By (i) any Δ_0 formula of \mathcal{L} is definite. (iv) gives a form of "definite separation" axiom, in the ¹¹⁹⁸ first part, and a kind of "definite replacement" in the second part. Note also that if *s* is a definite term ¹¹⁹⁹ then in particular " $x \in s$ ", " $\exists y \in s\varphi$ " are definite formulae.

1200 LEMMA 3.2 (ZF⁻) If t is a definite term then: $\forall \vec{x}(t(\vec{x}) \in V)$.

PROOF: Formally this would be a proof by induction on the complexity of t; informally notice that the way we have defined definite terms uses methods, such as at (ii) where the ZF⁻ axioms yield these classes directly as sets, or in the case of (iii) and (iv) an appeal to Ax.Subsets would yield them as sets. In (vi) we appeal to the principle of recursion (which does not use Ax.Power) to ensure that f as defined there is a function of V^n to V (for some n). Q.E.D.

1206

¹²⁰⁷ We shall be interested in terms and formulae that are absolute between any two transitive ZF^- models ¹²⁰⁸ *M*, *N*. Such we shall call *absolutely definite*, a.d. for short. We shall be particularly interested in when ¹²⁰⁹ they are so absolute between such an *M* and *V*. We shall readily be able to identify a whole host of terms ¹²¹⁰ and defining formulae as definite. We shall also be showing that any definite term or formula is a.d., and ¹²¹¹ thus in one fell swoop be able to conclude they are absolute for such classes. As might be expected the ¹²¹² proof proceeds by induction on the complexity of the term or formula.

THEOREM 3.3 Let $t(\vec{x})$ be a definite term, and $\varphi(\vec{x})$ a definite formula. Then (a) t and (b) φ are a.d., that is they are absolute between any two transitive ZF⁻ models M, N.

PROOF: We shall first prove (a) and (b) by a simultaneous induction on the complexity of definite terms and formulae. We do this by referring to the construction clauses (i)-(vi) Def. 3.1 in turn. It suffices to prove this absoluteness between V and any transitive class term model of ZF^-W (note V is also a transitive ZF^- term). So let W be a transitive class term with $(ZF^-)^W$. The atomic formulae of (i) are trivially so absolute, and the inductive steps in the more complex formulae are trivial except for the bounded existential quantifier; assume $y \in W$ and φ is absolute for W:

$$((\exists x \in y)\varphi)^{W} \leftrightarrow (\exists x(x \in y \land \varphi))^{W} \leftrightarrow \exists x \in W(x \in y \land \varphi^{W}) \leftrightarrow \exists x(x \in y \land \varphi^{W}) \leftrightarrow (\exists x \in y)\varphi$$

where we use the transitivity of *W* and hence that $y \subseteq W$, in the \leftarrow direction of the third equivalence. We remark that we have shown:

1217 COROLLARY 3.4 Let φ be a Δ_0 formula. Then φ is a.d.

¹²¹⁸ For (ii) suppose s, t are definite:

$$(\bigcup s)^W = \{z \mid \exists y \in s(z \in y)\}^W = \{z \mid z \in W \land \exists y \in s^W(z \in y)\} = \{z \mid \exists y \in s^W(z \in y)\} = \bigcup s$$

since $s^W \subseteq W$. $\{s, t\}$ and $s \land t$ are similar.

For (iii) suppose t_0, \ldots, t_n are definite. Let $\vec{z} \supseteq \operatorname{Fvbl}\{t_1, \ldots, t_n\}$. Let $\{x_1, \ldots, x_n\} \supseteq \operatorname{Fvbl}(t_0)$. Then we make the inductive assumptions that for any $\vec{z} \in W : t_i(\vec{z})^W = t_i(\vec{z})$, and for any $\vec{x} \in W$ that $t_{1223} \quad t_0(\vec{x})^W = t_0(\vec{x})$. By Lemma 3.2, if $t_i(\vec{z})$ is defined for $\vec{z} \in W$ then we know that $t_i(\vec{z}) \in W$.

$$(t_0(t_1(\vec{z})/x_1,...,t_n(\vec{z})/x_n))^W = t_0^W(t_1^W(\vec{z})/x_1,...,t_n^W(\vec{z})/x_n)$$

= $t_0^W(t_1(\vec{z})/x_1,...,t_n(\vec{z})/x_n)$
= $t_0(t_1(\vec{z})/x_1,...,t_n(\vec{z})/x_n)$

The first equality is just the definition of relativisation to *W* and the next two are the inductive hypotheses outlined.

Entirely similarly,

$$(\varphi(t_1/x_1,\ldots,t_n/x_n))^W \leftrightarrow \varphi^W(t_1^W/x_1,\ldots,t_n^W/x_n) \leftrightarrow \varphi^W(t_1/x_1,\ldots,t_n/x_n) \leftrightarrow \varphi(t_1/x_1,\ldots,t_n/x_n)$$

where the new inductive hypothesis is now that $\varphi(\vec{x}) \leftrightarrow \varphi(\vec{x})^W$ for any $\vec{x} \in W$, and is used in the final equivalence. The first equivalence is Lemma 1.22.

For (iv): suppose $\varphi(x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n)$ and t_1, \dots, t_n are definite, then:

1229 $(y \cap \{x \mid \varphi(x/x_0, t_1/x_1, \dots, t_n/x_n)\})^W$

1230 = $y \cap W \cap (\{x \mid \varphi(x, t_1/x_1, \dots, t_n/x_n)\})^W$

1231 = $y \cap W \cap \{x \in W \mid (\varphi(x, t_1/x_1, \dots, t_n/x_n))^W\}$

1232 = $y \cap W \cap \{x \in W \mid \varphi(x, t_1/x_1, \dots, t_n/x_n)\}$ (by (iii))

 $= y \cap \{x \mid \varphi(x, t_1/x_1, \dots, t_n/x_n)\} \text{ since } y \subseteq W \text{ as Trans(W)}.$

Assume $z \in W$ and t_1 is definite. We make the inductive assumption that we have shown that t_{1235} $t_1(u, v)^W = t_1(u, v) \in W$ for any $u, v \in W$. Then

$$\{t_1(y,x)|y\in z\}^W = \{t_1(y,x)^W|(y\in z)^W\} = \{t_1(y,x)|y\in z\}$$

using that $z \subseteq W$ in the first equality.

¹²³⁸ For (v) we consider ω . We note that the following are expressible in a Δ_0 way and hence are absolute ¹²³⁹ for *W*:

1240 (a) $x = \emptyset \leftrightarrow \forall z \in x(z \neq z)$

1236

(b) Trans(x)
$$\leftrightarrow \forall y \in x \forall z \in y(z \in x);$$

1242 (c) $x \in \text{On} \leftrightarrow (\text{Trans}(x) \land \forall y, z \in x(y \in z \lor z \in y \lor z = y));$

1243 (d) $\operatorname{Lim}(x) \leftrightarrow x \in \operatorname{On} \wedge x \neq \emptyset \land \forall y \in x \exists z \in x (y \in z);$

1244 (e)
$$x \in \omega \leftrightarrow x \in On \land \neg Lim(x) \land \forall y \in x \neg Lim(y)$$
.

1245 (f) $x = \omega \leftrightarrow x \in \text{On} \land \text{Lim}(x) \land \forall y \in x \neg \text{Lim}(y)$

By (e) we have seen that $x \in \omega$ is given by a Δ_0 formula and hence is absolute for W. Now note that $\omega \subseteq W$: suppose $n \in \omega$ is least for which $n \notin W$. Then $0 = \emptyset \in W$ so $n = m + 1 =_{df} m \cup \{m\}$. However if $m^W = m$ then by Ax.Pair and Union $(m \cup \{m\})^W \in W$ where

 $(m \cup \{m\})^W = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)^W\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x = m)\} = \{x \in W | (x \in m \lor x$

Hence $\omega \subseteq W$. But then $\omega^W = \{x \in W | (x \in \omega)^W\} = \{x \in W | (x \in \omega)\}$ (by (e) 1251 $= \{x | (x \in \omega)\}$ (since $\omega \subseteq W$). 1252 $= \omega$. 1253 Finally for (vi): we assume t is definite, and Fun(t), and f is the canonical function term given by: 1254 $f(y, \vec{x}) = t(y, \vec{x}, \{f(z, \vec{x}) \mid z \in y\}).$ 1255 We thus have the inductive hypothesis that $t(y, \vec{x}, u)^W = t(y, \vec{x}, u)$ for any $y, \vec{x}, u \in W$. Let $y, \vec{x} \in W$. 1256 W. We prove the result by \in -induction, hence we also assume we have proven for any $z \in y$ that 1257 $f(z, \vec{x})^{W} = f(z, \vec{x}) \in W$. Then by (iv) we have: $\{f(z, \vec{x}) | z \in y\}^{W} = \{f(z, \vec{x}) | z \in y\} \in W$. Then: 1258 $f(y, \vec{x})^W = (t(y, \vec{x}, \{f(z, \vec{x}) \mid z \in y\})^W$ 1259 $= t(y, \vec{x}, \{f(z, \vec{x}) \mid z \in y\}^W)$ 1260 $= t(y, \vec{x}, \{f(z, \vec{x}) \mid z \in y\})$ (by the above comment) 1261 $= f(y, \vec{x})$ as required. Q.E.D.(Thm.3.3) 1262 1263

We now have a very powerful method for showing that all sorts of concepts and definitions are absolute for transitive structures in which ZF⁻ holds. For example all the ordinal arithmetic operations are defined by recursive clauses from definite terms. We can formally justify this as follows.

LEMMA 3.5 Suppose we define:

$$f(y, \vec{x}) = t_1(y, \vec{x}) \quad if \psi_1(y, \vec{x})$$

= :
= $t_n(y, \vec{x}) \quad if \psi_n(y, \vec{x})$
= \emptyset otherwise.

for some definite t_1, \ldots, t_n , and mutually exclusive (meaning at most one of $\psi_1(y, \vec{x}), \ldots, \psi_n(y, \vec{x})$ holds) but definite ψ_1, \ldots, ψ_n , then $f(y, \vec{x})$ is definite.

- PROOF: Note that $u_1 \cup \cdots \cup u_n = \bigcup \{u_1, \ldots, u_n\}$ so this is definite. Then: $f(y, \vec{x}) = \{t_1(y, \vec{x}) | \psi_1(y, \vec{x})\} \cup \cdots \cup \{t_n(y, \vec{x}) | \psi_n(y, \vec{x})\}.$ Q.E.D.
- ¹²⁷¹ COROLLARY 3.6 All the arithmetical functions $A_{\alpha}(\beta) = \alpha + \beta$; $M_{\alpha}(\beta) = \alpha \cdot \beta$; $E_{\alpha}(\beta) = \alpha^{\beta}$ are definite ¹²⁷² and hence a.d.

PROOF: For example:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} A_{\alpha}(x) &=& \alpha & \text{if } x = \varnothing; \\ A_{\alpha}(x) &=& A_{\alpha}(y) + 1 & \text{if } x \in \operatorname{On} \wedge \operatorname{Succ}(x); \\ A_{\alpha}(x) &=& \sup\{A_{\alpha}(y) | y \in x\} & \text{if } x \in \operatorname{On} \wedge \operatorname{Lim}(x). \end{array}$$

The first and third conditions on the right we have already seen are definite at (a), (c), (d) above. But Succ(x) $\leftrightarrow \exists y (x = y \cup \{y\}) \leftrightarrow \exists y \in x (x = y \cup \{y\})$. We note that $y \cup \{y\}$ is definite, and so by the Theorem 3.3 Succ(x) is definite. The three conditions are mutually exclusive we can appeal to the last lemma once we note that the three terms \emptyset , $y \cup \{y\}$, and $\bigcup z$ where z is a definite set by 3.1 (iv) in place of t_1, t_2 , and t_3 are definite. The other functions are exactly the same. Q.E.D. 1279

1280

"x is countable" cannot be expressed by a definite formula $\varphi(x)$: again if it were, we should have that 1281 the concept is absolute for transitive W satisfying $(ZF^{-})^{W}$. We list some definite concepts. 1282

LEMMA 3.7 For any n: (i) $\bigcup^n x$, (ii) $\{x_1, \ldots, x_n\}$, (iii) $\{x, y\}$; $\{u\}_0$, $\{u\}_1$ where $u = \{(u)_0, (u)_1\}$; (iv) 1283 $(x_1,\ldots,x_n), (v) \times (v) \times (v)$ ran(z), (v) dom(z), (v) of (v) iii) $z^{*}x, (ix) z \upharpoonright x, (x) z^{-1}$ are all definite terms. 1284

The following relations are definable by definite formulae: 1285

(xi) $x \subseteq y$; (xii) Trans(y); (xiii) Rel(z); Fun(z); (xiv) z(x) = y; (xv) "z is a (1-1) function"; z is an onto 1286 function; (xvi) "x is unbounded in β "; " $z : \alpha \longrightarrow \beta$ is a cofinal function"; " $x \subseteq \beta$ is a closed and unbounded 1287 set": 1288

- (xvii) the terms TC(x), (xviii) $\rho(x)$ are definite terms. 1289
- Thus all the above are a.d. 1290

PROOF: The first two are simply repeated applications of operations defined to be definite. Similarly 1291 (iii) $\langle x, y \rangle = \{ \{x\}, \{x, y\} \}$; (iv) $\langle x_1, \dots, x_n \rangle$ was defined by repeated application of $\langle -, - \rangle$ and hence is 1292 definite; (v) $x \times y = \bigcup \{x \times \{z\} | z \in y\} = \bigcup \{\{\langle w, z \rangle | w \in x\} | z \in y\}.$ 1293 $m(\pi)$ $(u, c, l)^2 \pi^{1/2}$ - 1 12

1294 (v1): ran(z) = {
$$u \in \bigcup^{2} z | \exists w \in z \exists v \in \bigcup^{2} z (w = \langle v, u \rangle)$$
;
(cii) down(v) { $u \in U^{2} z | \exists w \in z \exists v \in U^{2} z (w = \langle v, u \rangle)$ }

1295 (V11): dom(
$$r$$
) = { $u \in \bigcup^{-} z | \exists w \in z \exists v \in \bigcup^{-} z (w = (u, v))$ };

- (viii): $z^{*}x = \{v \in \bigcup^{2} z \mid \exists u \in x \exists w \in z(w = \langle u, v \rangle)\};$ 1296
- (ix), (x) Exercise. 1297

(xi): $x \subseteq y \leftrightarrow \forall z \in x (z \in y)$, it is thus Δ_0 and so definite; 1298

(xii) Trans(y) $\leftrightarrow \forall z \in y (z \subseteq y)$ 1299

(xiii) $\operatorname{Rel}(z) \leftrightarrow z \subseteq \operatorname{dom}(z) \times \operatorname{ran}(z);$ 1300

1301
$$\operatorname{Fun}(z) \leftrightarrow \operatorname{Rel}(z) \land \forall x \in \operatorname{dom}(z) \forall u, v \in \operatorname{ran}(z) (v \neq u \longrightarrow (\langle x, u \rangle \in z \leftrightarrow \langle x, v \rangle \notin z));$$

 $(\mathrm{xv}) z(x) = y \leftrightarrow \mathrm{Fun}(z) \land \langle x, y \rangle \in z;$ 1302

(xvi) Exercise. 1303

(xvii) $TC(x) = t(x, \{TC(y) | y \in x\})$ for a definite *t* using the definite recursion scheme. 1304

(xviii): $s(z) = z \cup \{z\}$ is definite; then $\{s(v) \mid v \in u\}$ is definite as then is $t(u) = \bigcup \{s(v) \mid v \in u\}$ (by 1305 (iv) and (ii) resp. in Def.3.1. Using the definite recursion scheme (vi) we get $\rho(x) = t(\{\rho(y) \mid y \in x\})$. 1306 Q.E.D.

(Here we are just expressing that $\rho(x) = \sup \{\rho(y) + 1 | y \in x\}$.) 1307

EXERCISE 3.1 (i) Show that "*z* is a total order of *y*" can be expressed in a Δ_0 fashion. 1308

(ii) Complete (ix),(x), (xvi), (xvii) of Lemma 3.7. 1309

LEMMA 3.8 The following are definite: ${}^{n}x$ (for any n); ${}^{<\omega}x =_{df} \bigcup \{{}^{n}x|n \in \omega\}$; "x is finite". Hence 1310 $\mathcal{P}_{\leq \omega}(z) =_{\mathrm{df}} \{x \subseteq z | x \text{ is finite}\}$ is definite. 1311

PROOF: By induction on n: we define $F(n, x) = {}^{n}x$: 1312

 $F(0,x) = {}^{0}x = \emptyset$ 1313

1314
$$F(n+1,x) = {n+1 \choose x} = \{f \cup \{\langle n, y \rangle\} | f \in F(n,x) \land y \in x\};$$

 $F(\omega, x) = {}^{<\omega}x = \bigcup \{F(n, x) | n \in \omega\}.$ 1315

This is given by definite recursion clauses, and so F(n, x) is definite for $n \le \omega$. 1316

Formalising semantics within ZF

¹³¹⁷ "x is finite" $\leftrightarrow \exists f \in {}^{<\omega}x(f \text{ is onto}).$ And then: ¹³¹⁸ $\{x \subseteq z \mid x \text{ is finite}\} = \{x \mid \exists f \in {}^{<\omega}z(x = \operatorname{ran}(f))\}$ Q.E.D.

1319

Note: the absoluteness of finiteness implies that if $Trans(W) \wedge (ZF^{-})^{W}$ then any finite subset of *W* is in *W*. This need not be true of course for infinite subsets of *W*.

1322 EXERCISE 3.2 Suppose Trans $(W) \wedge (ZF^{-})^{W}$. Show $(V_{\alpha})^{W} = V_{\alpha} \cap W$. [Hint: use that the rank function is definite.]

Note: "cf(α)" along with "*x is a cardinal*" or " ω_1 " are not definite, and so not absolute for such *W* in general (but see the next exercise). Neither then is "*x is a regular/singular cardinal*." However being a wellorder is so absolute as the next lemma shows.

EXERCISE 3.3 Let λ be a limit ordinal; show that the following are absolute for V_{λ} : (i) $\mathcal{P}(x)$ (ii) " α is a cardinal" (and hence $(Card)^{V_{\lambda}} = Card \cap \lambda$); (iii) cf (α) (iv) " α is (strongly) inaccessible" (v) $y = V_{\alpha}$ (vi) \aleph_{α} (vii) \beth_{α} .

1328 LEMMA 3.9 (*i*) "*z* is a wellorder of *y*"; (*ii*) "*z* is a wellfounded relation on y" are absolutely definite.

PROOF: Suppose Trans $(W) \land (ZF^{-})^{W}$, $z, y \in W$. For (i) "*z* is a total order of *y*" can be expressed in a Δ_{0} way (Exercise). Suppose ("*z* is a wellorder of *y*")^{*W*}. Since we have Ax. Replacement holding in *W* we have that "(y, z) is isomorphic to an ordinal" holds in *W*. If $(\alpha \in On)^{W}$ and $(f : (y, z) \cong (\alpha, <))^{W}$ then $\dim(f) = y, \operatorname{ran}(f) = \alpha$, "*f* is a bijection", *etc.*, are all absolute for *W*. Hence $f : (y, z) \cong (\alpha, <)$ holds in *V*. Consequently (y, z) is truly a wellorder.

Conversely if "*z* is a wellorder of *y*" with $z, y \in W$, then as for any $w \in V$ with $w \subseteq y$ we have *w* has a *z*-minimal element w_0 say, then $w_0 \in W$ (as Trans(*W*)) and no $u \in W$ satisfies uzw_0 . So if also $w \in W$ then (" w_0 is an *z*-minimal element of *w*")^{*W*}.

(ii) is only an amplification of (i), effected by defining an absolute rank function ρ_z of the wellfounded relation z. We leave this to the reader. Q.E.D.

1339

¹³⁴⁰ The example of wellorder shows that being expressible by a Δ_0 formula is not a necessary condition ¹³⁴¹ for absoluteness: wellorder in general is a Π_1 -concept when literally written out. However if $(ZF^-)^W$ ¹³⁴² holds then we have Ax.Replacement available to turn this Π_1 concept into an existential statement and ¹³⁴³ hence have that it is *U*-absolute for *W*. We may say that it is thus " $\Delta_1^{ZF^-}$ ". If *W* is not a model of sufficient ¹³⁴⁴ Replacement then this argument can fail.

3.1.1 The non-finite axiomatisability of ZF

¹³⁴⁶ We use the Reflection Theorem together with our absoluteness results to prove the non-finite axioma-¹³⁴⁷ tisability of ZF. (We say a set of axioms *T* axiomatises *S* if $T \vdash \sigma$ for every σ from *S*. A set *S* is *finitely* ¹³⁴⁸ axiomatisable if there is a finite set *T* that axiomatises *S*.)

THEOREM 3.10 (*The non-finite axiomatisability of ZF*) Let T be any set of axioms in \mathcal{L} , extending ZF, and T_0 be any finite subset of T; if from T_0 we can prove every axiom of T then T is inconsistent.

In particular, with T as ZF, no finite subset of ZF axioms will axiomatise all of ZF, unless ZF is inconsistent.

44

PROOF: Suppose $T \supseteq T_0$ were such sets of axioms, with all of T provable from T_0 , for a contradiction. We have the assertion: $ZF \vdash \forall \alpha \exists \beta > \alpha((\bigwedge T_0)^{V_\beta} \leftrightarrow \bigwedge T_0)$. Then as T_0 proves every axiom of ZF, it proves the following instance of the Reflection Theorem:

1356 $T_0 \vdash \forall \alpha \exists \beta > \alpha((\bigwedge T_0)^{V_\beta} \leftrightarrow \bigwedge T_0).$

1357 However trivially $T_0 \vdash \forall \alpha \exists \beta > \alpha((\bigwedge T_0)^{V_\beta})$

since $T_0 \vdash \bigwedge T_0$. Then, by the principle of ordinal induction:

 $T_0 \vdash \exists \beta_0 [(\land T_0)^{V_{\beta_0}} \land \forall \delta < \beta_0 (\neg (\land T_0)^{V_{\delta}}]. (*)$

We are assuming that T_0 proves all of ZF, so by the Soundness of first order predicate logic, Theorem 1361 1.20, in the form that if $T_0 \vdash \psi$ and $(\bigwedge T_0)^{V_{\gamma}}$, then $(\psi)^{V_{\gamma}}$, we may deduce, $T_0 \vdash (ZF)^{V_{\beta_0}}$.

Then all our absoluteness results about transitive models hold for V_{β_0} for such a β_0 as in (*). Also in particular :

$$T_0 \vdash \beta < \beta_0 \to (V_\beta)^{V_{\beta_0}} = V_\beta \cap V_{\beta_0} = V_\beta \text{ (Exercise 3.2)}$$

Again using Soundness, since $T_0 \vdash \exists \beta (\bigwedge T_0)^{V_{\beta}}$, we have

1366 $T_0 \vdash (\exists \beta (\bigwedge T_0)^{V_\beta})^{V_{\beta_0}}.$

1367 However, then we have

1368 $T_0 \vdash \exists \beta < \beta_0 (\bigwedge T_0)^{V_\beta}$ which contradicts (*). So T_0 and hence T is inconsistent. Q.E.D.

1369

1359

1364

3.2 FORMALISING SYNTAX

We shall consider the language $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}_{\in,=}$ that we have been using to date, that can be interpreted in 1370 \in -structures, that is any structure (X, E) with a domain a class of sets X and an interpretation E for the 1371 \in symbol. In what follows, we shall almost always be considering the *standard interpretation* of the \in 1372 symbol, where it is interpreted as the true set membership relation. The equality symbol \doteq will without 1373 exception be interpreted as true equality =. Up to now the object language of our ZF theory has been 1374 floating free from our universe of sets, but we shall see how this language (indeed any reasonably given 1375 language) can be represented by using sets, just as we can represent the natural numbers 0, 1, 2, ... by the 1376 sets $\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}, \{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}, \dots$ We make therefore a choice of *coding* of the language \mathcal{L} by sets in V. The 1377 method of coding itself is not terribly important, there are many ways of doing this, but the essential 1378 feature is that we want a mapping of the language into a class of sets, where the latter is ZF (in fact ZF⁻ 1379 or even much more simply) definable). As we are mainly interested in the first order language \mathcal{L} we give 1380 the definitions in detail just for that. In principle we could do this for any language, for any structures. 1383

DEFINITION 3.11 (Gödel code sets) We define by (a meta-theoretic) recursion on the structure of formulae φ of \mathcal{L} the code set $[\varphi] \in V_{\omega}$.

1384 (*i*)
$$v_i = v_j$$
 is $2^{i+1} \cdot 3^{j+1}$; $v_i \in v_j$ is $5^{i+1} \cdot 7^{j+1}$;

1385 (*ii*) $[\chi \lor \psi]$ is $\{[\chi], [\psi], \{[\chi]\}\}$;

1386 (*iii*) $\lceil \neg \psi \rceil$ *is* $\{0, \lceil \psi \rceil\}$;

1387 (*iv*) $\exists v_i \psi^{\uparrow} is \{11^{i+1}, [\psi^{\uparrow}]\}$.

¹³⁸⁸ Note (a) atomic formulae are the only ones coded by integers, (b) in each case, that if φ is non-atomic ¹³⁸⁹ then the code set contains immediate subformula(e) codes as direct members; (c) Note the device in (iii) for ensuring which is the first disjunct: we have $w = \lceil \chi \lor \psi \rceil \leftrightarrow |w| = 3 \land \exists u, v, s \in w (u = \lceil \chi \rceil \land v = 1391 \quad \lceil \psi \rceil \land s = \{u\})$. This is thus Δ_0 .

¹³⁹² Clearly given a code set *u* we may decode φ from it in a unique fashion, making use of the primes and ¹³⁹³ the prime power coding. We give the formal counterpart of the above definition using finite functions ¹³⁹⁴ from V_{ω} , a definite formula defining the characteristic function of the class of code sets of formulae of ¹³⁹⁵ \mathcal{L} :

1396 DEFINITION 3.12 Fml $(u, f, n) = 1 \leftrightarrow f \in {}^{<\omega}V_{\omega} \wedge \operatorname{dom}(f) = n + 1 \wedge f(n) = u \wedge$

1397 $\wedge \forall k \in \operatorname{dom}(f) [\exists i, j \in \omega(f(k) = 2^{i+1} \cdot 3^{j+1} \lor f(k) = 5^{i+1} \cdot 7^{j+1} \lor$

 $\exists m, l < k[f(k) = \{f(m), f(l), \{f(m)\}\} \lor f(k) = \{0, f(m)\} \lor \exists i \in \omega(f(k) = \{11^{i+1}, f(m)\}]]);$

1399 $\operatorname{Fml}(u, f, n) = 0$ otherwise.

We thus may think of the formula φ as represented by, or coded by, f(n), where f is the function that describes its construction according to the last definition, with dom(f) = n + 1.

1402 DEFINITION 3.13 Fmla(u) = 1 $\leftrightarrow \exists n \in \omega \exists f \in {}^{<\omega}V_{\omega}$ Fml(u, f, n) = 1; Fmla(u) = 0 otherwise.

1403 It should be noted that both the last two definitions are built up using definite terms, and so are 1404 defined by definite formulae and thus a.d.

1405 **3.3** FORMALISING THE SATISFACTION RELATION

¹⁴⁰⁶ We now formalise the (first order) *satisfaction relation* due to Tarski, familiar from model theory.

1407 DEFINITION 3.14 (i) $Q_x =_{df} \{h | \operatorname{Fun}(h) \land \operatorname{dom}(h) = \omega \land \operatorname{ran}(h) \subseteq x \land \exists n \in \omega \exists y \in x (\forall m \ge nh(m) = y) \}.$ 1408 (ii) If $h \in Q_x$, and $y \in x$, then h(y/i) is the function defined by:

 $\forall j \in \omega(j \neq i \longrightarrow h(y/i)(j) = h(j)) \land h(y/i)(i) = y.$

Again Q_x is definite: we may write

 $h \in Q_x \leftrightarrow \exists h_0 \in {}^{<\omega}x \exists y \in x (h = h_0 \cup \{(n, y) | n \in \omega \land \operatorname{dom}(h_0) \le n\}).$

Thus although Q_x does not contain *finite* functions, any $h \in Q_x$ is essentially a finite function with a constant tail - and this makes it definite. (Again: ω_x , like $\mathcal{P}(x)$, is *not* definite.) (ii) also specifies a definite relation between *i*, *x*, *y*, and *h*.

We next specify what it means for a finite function *h* to be an assignment of variables potentially occurring in a formula *u* to objects in *x* that makes *u* come out true in the structure (x, \in) .

¹⁴¹⁷ DEFINITION 3.15 (*i*) We define by recursion the term Sat(u, x);

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{Sat}(\ulcorner v_i \doteq v_j\urcorner, x) &= \{h \in Q_x | h(i) = h(j)\};\\ \operatorname{Sat}(\ulcorner v_i \doteq v_j\urcorner, x) &= \{h \in Q_x | h(i) \in h(j)\};\\ \operatorname{Sat}(\ulcorner \chi \lor \psi\urcorner, x) &= \operatorname{Sat}(\ulcorner \chi\urcorner, x) \cup \operatorname{Sat}(\ulcorner \psi\urcorner, x)\};\\ \operatorname{Sat}(\ulcorner \neg \psi\urcorner, x) &= Q_x \setminus \operatorname{Sat}(\ulcorner \psi\urcorner, x)\};\\ \operatorname{Sat}(\ulcorner \exists v_i \psi\urcorner, x) &= \{h \in Q_x | \exists y \in x(h(y/i) \in \operatorname{Sat}(\ulcorner \psi\urcorner, x))]\};\\ \operatorname{Sat}(u, x) &= \emptyset \text{ if } \operatorname{Fmla}(u) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Formalising definability: the function Def.

1418 (ii) We write $\langle x, \in \rangle \models u[h]$ iff $h \in Sat(u, x)$.

Note: By design then we have $\langle x, \in \rangle \models \lceil \neg \psi \rceil [h]$ iff it is not the case that $\langle x, \in \rangle \models \lceil \psi \rceil [h]$ etc. (We write the latter as $\langle x, \in \rangle \neq \lceil \psi \rceil [h]$.) If, uninterestingly, $x = \emptyset$ then also $\operatorname{Sat}(u, x) = \emptyset$.

LEMMA 3.16 Sat(u, x) is defined by a definite recursion. Hence " $(x, \in) \models [\varphi][h]$ " is definite.

Proof: This should be pretty clear, but we give an explicit recursive term t for Sat: 1422 $\operatorname{Sat}(u, x) = \{h \in Q_x \mid$ 1423 $Fmla(u) = 1 \wedge$ 1424 $\exists i, j \in \omega [(u = 2^{i+1} \cdot 3^{j+1} \wedge h(i) = h(j)) \vee (u = 5^{i+1} \cdot 7^{j+1} \wedge h(i) \in h(j))]] \vee$ 1425 $\vee [|u| = 3 \land \exists v, w \in u[w = \{v\} \land h \in \bigcup \{\operatorname{Sat}(v, x) | v \in u\}]] \lor$ 1426 $\vee [0 \in u \land h \notin \bigcup \{ \operatorname{Sat}(v, x) | v \in u \}]$ 1427 $\forall [\exists i \in \omega(11^{i+1} \in u \land \exists y \in x(h(y/i) \in \bigcup \{ \text{Sat}(v, x) \mid v \in u \})] \}.$ 1428 The specification here yields a definite term $Sat(u, x) = t(x, u, {Sat(v, x) | v \in u})$ noting that we have 1429 already established that all the concepts appearing here, such as " Q_x ," Fmla(u)", " ω ", etc. are definite 1430 Q.E.D. 1431

By our work so far then then we may say that "the assignment *h* makes the formula φ true in the structure $\langle x, \in \rangle$ " if $\langle x, \in \rangle \models \ulcorner \varphi \urcorner [h]$. Otherwise we say it is similarly "false".

1434 If φ is a formula of \mathcal{L} with free variables amongst v_{j_0}, \ldots, v_{j_n} and $y_0, \ldots, y_n \in x$ then we abbreviate: 1435 $\langle x, \in \rangle \models \ulcorner \varphi \urcorner [y_0, \ldots, y_n] \longleftrightarrow \langle x, \in \rangle \models \ulcorner \varphi \urcorner [h]$ for any $h \in Q_x$ with $h(j_i) = y_i$ all $i \le n$.

This makes perfect sense, since the interpretation of the formula φ in the structure only depends on the assignment to the free variables of φ . If φ has no free variables at all, then it is deemed a sentence and either Sat($\ulcorner \varphi \urcorner, x) = Q_x$, in which we case we say the sentence φ is true in $\langle x, \in \rangle$ or else Sat($\ulcorner \varphi \urcorner, x) = \emptyset$ in which case it is false. In each case we simply write $\langle x, \in \rangle \models \ulcorner \varphi \urcorner$ or $\langle x, \in \rangle \notin \ulcorner \varphi \urcorner$ accordingly, as then assignment functions *h* are superfluous.

3.4 FORMALISING DEFINABILITY: THE FUNCTION Def.

¹⁴⁴² The following is the crucial function used to build up definable sets.

1443 DEFINITION 3.17 $\text{Def}(x) =_{df} \{ \{ w \in x \mid \langle x, \in \rangle \models u[h(w/0)] \}; \text{Fmla}(u) = 1 \land h \in Q_x \}.$

1444 LEMMA 3.18 "Def(x)" is a definite term.

PROOF: First note that we have shown that " $(x, \in) \models u[h(w/0)]$ " is definite. Hence so is

$$\iota(x, u, h) =_{\mathrm{df}} \{ w \in x | \langle x, \in \rangle \vDash u[h(w/0)] \}.$$

Hence $\{\iota(x, u, h) | \operatorname{Fmla}(u) = 1 \land h \in Q_x\}$ is definite.

The class Def(x) we think of as the "definable power set of x": it consists of those subsets $y \subseteq x$ so that membership in y is given by a formula $\varphi(v_0, v_1, \dots, v_m)$ all of whose free variables are amongst those shown, together with a *fixed* assignment of some y_1, \dots, y_m , and the members $y_0 \in y$ are determined

1441

Q.E.D.

by allowing v_0 to range over all of x. Those y_0 that when added to the fixed assignment y_1, \ldots, y_m , cause $\varphi[y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_m]$ to come out true in $\langle x, \in \rangle$ are then added to y. We may write slightly more informally:

$$Def(x) = \{z \mid z = \{w \mid \langle x, \in \rangle \vDash \varphi[w, y_1, \dots, y_m]\}, Fmla(\varphi) = 1, \ \vec{y} \in {}^{<\omega}x\}$$

where it is implicitly understood that we should have written $\lceil \varphi \rceil$ for φ and it is left unsaid that the free variables of φ have all been assigned some value in x by the assignment displayed.

LEMMA 3.19 (i) $x \in \text{Def}(x)$; (ii) $\text{Trans}(x) \longrightarrow x \subseteq \text{Def}(x)$; (iii) $\forall z \subseteq x(|z| < \omega \rightarrow z \in \text{Def}(x))$;

 $_{1451} \qquad (iv) (AC) |x| \ge \omega \longrightarrow |\operatorname{Def}(x)| = |x|.$

1452 PROOF: (i) $x = \{w \mid (x, \in) \models \lceil v_0 = v_0 \rceil [w]\}$ and so $x \in \text{Def}(x)$.

(iv) Assume x is infinite. Then Q_x has the same cardinality as ${}^{<\omega}x$, namely |x|. Also, $F =_{df} \{u \mid$ $Fmla(u) = 1\}$ is a countable set. Since Def(x) is the class of subsets of x given by a definition involving a formula $u \in Fmla$ together with a finite parameter string y_1, \ldots, y_n we see that: $|Def(x)| \leq$ $|F| \cdot |Q_x| = \omega \cdot |x| = |x|$. That $|x| \leq |Def(x)|$ follows from (iii). (ii) and (iii) are left as an exercise. Q.E.D.

1457 EXERCISE 3.4 Finish (ii) and (iii) of Lemma 3.9.

EXERCISE 3.5 Let
$$(x, \in)$$
 be a transitive \in -model. Show that $\operatorname{Trans}(\operatorname{Def}(x))$. If $y, z \in x$ then is $(y, z) \in \operatorname{Def}(x)$? Is

1459 {*x*}? [Hint (for the last question): If $\rho(x) = \alpha$, compute $\rho(\text{Def}(x))$ and compare this with the given sets.]

EXERCISE 3.6 Let us say that *w* is *outright definable in the set* (x, \in) if for some formula φ with only free variable v_0 then *w* is the unique element in *x* so that $(x, \in) \models \varphi[w]$. We may thus define a variant on the Def function by:

 $Def_{0}(x) = \{z \mid \{z\} = \{w \in x \mid \langle x, \in \rangle \models \varphi[w]\}, Fmla(\varphi) = 1, FVbl(\varphi) = \{v_{0}\}, w \in x\}$

of the sets outright definable in (x, \in) , definable without use of parameters. Show that $|Def_0(x)| \le \omega$ for any *x*.

1461 DEFINITION 3.20 We say that a set z is ordinal definable^{*} (" $z \in OD^*$ ") if for some β , $z \in Def_0(V_\beta)$.

(This definition is just a placeholder for the official - but equivalent - definition of ordinal definabilityto come.)

EXERCISE 3.7 (i) Show that: (a) $On \subseteq OD^*$; (b) $\forall \beta V_\beta \in OD^*$; (c) $\forall x (x \in OD^* \rightarrow \{x\} \in OD^*)$. (ii)(*) Show that there is a (countable) set X so that for unboundedly many ordinals $\beta X \in Def_0(V_\beta)$. [Hint: consider the theory of each V_β : the set of all codes of sentences σ so that $\langle V_\beta, \epsilon \rangle \models [\sigma]^*$. This is a subset of V_ω .]

1467 **3.5** MORE ON CORRECTNESS AND CONSISTENCY

The next theorem illustrates that our definitions are 'correct': we have formulated two ways of talking about a statement φ being 'true in a structure' W, firstly we considered relativised formulae and spoke from an exterior perspective of ' φ holds or is true in W' by asserting ' φ^W '. The formula φ from \mathcal{L} we consider to be in our language in which we wish to state our axioms about the structure consisting of our intuitive universe of sets. We have now a second interior method through the formalised version of the ¹⁴⁷³ language which consists of sets coding formulae as for $\lceil \varphi \rceil$ above together with the satisfaction relation. ¹⁴⁷⁴ This relation was between (codes of) formulae and structures or 'models'. The next theorem asserts that ¹⁴⁷⁵ these two methods are in harmony.

1476 THEOREM 3.21 (Correctness Theorem) Suppose φ is a formula of \mathcal{L} with free variables $\vec{v} = v_{j_1}, \dots, v_{j_m}$ 1477 then:

¹⁴⁷⁸ $\operatorname{ZF}^{-} \vdash \forall x \forall \vec{y} \in {}^{m}x[(\langle x, \epsilon \rangle \vDash {}^{r}\varphi^{\uparrow}[\vec{y}/\vec{v}]) \longleftrightarrow (\varphi(\vec{y}/\vec{v}))^{\langle x, \epsilon \rangle}].$

• This would be a proof by induction on the complexity of φ (we shall omit the details). It is again a *theorem scheme*, being one theorem for each φ .

The ZF and ZFC axiom collections themselves have formal counterparts as sets: just as each formula φ is mapped to its code set $\ulcorner \varphi \urcorner$ as above, we can also find *sets* that collect together the code sets of those sentences φ that are axioms of ZF (or ZFC). Namely, there is an algorithm for listing the axioms of ZF as $\varphi_0, \varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_n, \dots$

1485 DEFINITION 3.22 $[ZF] =_{df} \{u | Fmla(u) = 1 \land (Ax 0(u) \lor Ax 1(u) \lor \cdots \lor Ax 8(u))\}$. 1486 [ZFC] is defined similarly by adding " $\lor Ax 9(u)$ ".

In the above by 'Axj(u)' we mean that u is a code set for an axiom of the type Axj. Thus Axo is the Ax.Extensionality. If this latter axiom is written out using only \neg , \lor , \exists *etc.* as σ then we have Ax $0(u) \leftrightarrow u = \lceil \sigma \rceil$. The other axioms similarly must be written out in the formal language, and then coded according to our prescription. Some axioms are in fact axiom schemata: infinite sets of axioms. So for Ax 6(u) (for Ax.Replacement) we should demand that u conforms to the right shape of formula that is an instance of the axiom of replacement when written out in this correct manner. Ax 6(u) will then be an infinite set, as will be $\lceil ZF \rceil$.

LEMMA 3.23 (i) " $u \in [ZF]$ ", " $u \in [ZFC]$ " are definite. (ii) If φ is an axiom of ZF then

 $ZF^- \vdash \varphi^{\gamma} \in ZF^{\gamma}.$

1494 Similarly if φ is an axiom of ZFC then $ZF^- \vdash [\varphi] \in [ZFC]$.

This would again be a proof by induction on the structure of φ . The intuitive meaning that it captures is that "ZF \subseteq "ZF". The point again is that the definitions of "ZF" and "ZFC" are again *definite*. These details are uninteresting and somewhat tedious, but the *idea* that this can be done is very interesting. (ii) is again a theorem scheme, one for each axiom φ .

1499 DEFINITION 3.24 " $\langle x, \in \rangle \models [ZF]$ " $\iff_{df} \forall u \in [ZF] \langle x, \in \rangle \models u$. (" $\langle x, \in \rangle \models [ZFC]$ " similarly.)

We have that, *e.g.* " $\langle x, \in \rangle \models [ZF]$ " and " $\langle x, \in \rangle \models [ZFC]$ " are definite, and so a.d. Then in this case we say that $\langle x, \in \rangle$ "is a model of ZF(C)".

COROLLARY 3.25 (to the Correctness Theorem) For φ any axiom of ZF⁻ (or ZFC) then

$$\mathbf{ZF}^{-} \vdash (\langle x, \in \rangle \vDash^{\mathsf{TZF}^{-1}} \longrightarrow \varphi^{\langle x, \in \rangle});$$

similarly

$$\mathbf{ZF}^{-} \vdash (\langle x, \in \rangle \vDash^{\mathsf{ZFC}} \longrightarrow \varphi^{\langle x, \in \rangle}).$$

EXERCISE 3.8 Suppose κ is strongly inaccessible. Verify that $\langle V_{\kappa}, \epsilon \rangle \models [ZFC]$.

EXERCISE 3.9 (*) (E) Let \mathcal{A}, \mathcal{B} be structures. We write $\mathcal{A} < \mathcal{B}$ if for every formula u, every $h \in Q_{\mathcal{A}}$ if $\mathcal{B} \models u[h]$ then $\mathcal{A} \models u[h]$. Suppose that κ, λ are such that $\langle V_{\kappa}, \in \rangle < \langle V_{\lambda}, \in \rangle$. Show that κ is a strong limit cardinal and that both $\langle V_{\kappa}, \in \rangle, \langle V_{\lambda}, \in \rangle$ are models of ZFC.

EXERCISE 3.10 (*) (*E*) Suppose there is λ which is strongly inaccessible. Show that there is κ with $\langle V_{\kappa}, \epsilon \rangle$ a model of ZFC, and with $cf(\kappa) = \omega$. [Hint: Use the Reflection Theorem proof on V_{λ} , which we now have assumed to be a ZFC model, to show that every formula φ of ZFC now "reflects" down to a cub $C_{\varphi} \subseteq \lambda$ set of ordinals. Now intersect over all φ . This method shows that in fact there is a cub set of points $\kappa < \lambda$ with $\langle V_{\kappa}, \epsilon \rangle$ not only a model of ZFC, but also $\langle V_{\kappa}, \epsilon \rangle < \langle V_{\lambda}, \epsilon \rangle$]

EXERCISE 3.11 (*)(*E*). Let $\lceil S_n \rceil$ denote the codes of Σ_n formulae of \mathcal{L} in the Levy hierarchy. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Show that there is a term $c_n \subseteq On$ for a closed unbounded class of ordinals, so that $ZF \vdash \forall \delta \in c_n \forall u \in \lceil S_n \rceil \forall \vec{x} \in V_{\delta}(\varphi(\vec{x}) \leftrightarrow \langle V_{\delta}, \epsilon \rangle \models u[\vec{x}])$. This we should naturally, but informally, abbreviate as $\langle V_{\delta}, \epsilon \rangle <_{\Sigma_n} \langle V, \epsilon \rangle$.

EXERCISE 3.12 Suppose $\langle X, \in \rangle \models T$ for some set of sentences *T* including Ax.Ext. Show that there is a countable transitive *x* with $\langle x, \in \rangle \models T$. [Hint: The Downward-Löwenheim Skolem Theorem says for any cardinal λ with $\omega \le \lambda \le |X|$ there is a *Y* with $\langle Y, \in \rangle < \langle X, \in \rangle$ and $|Y| = \lambda$. Then use the Mostowski-Shepherdson Collapsing Lemma.] In particular if there is an \in -structure which is a model of ZFC then there is a countable transitive one.

1518

3.5.1 Incompleteness and Consistency Arguments

In general when we say that a theory T is *consistent* we mean that for no sentence σ do we have $T \vdash \sigma$ and 1519 $T \vdash \neg \sigma$. We abbreviate this as "Con(T)". Of course if T is inconsistent then we may prove anything at all 1520 from T and we can then say (assuming that T is in a language in which we formulate arithmetic axioms) 1521 that " $T \vdash 0 = 1$ " encapsulates the notion that T is inconsistent. The heart of Gödel's argument is that it is 1522 possible to formulate the concept of a formal proof from an algorithmically or recursively given axiom 1523 set T extending PA, in such a way that " v_0 codes a proof from T" of v_1 ", abbreviated $Pf^T(v_0, v_1)$, can be 1524 represented in the theory T. Then we may use " $\neg \exists v_0 \operatorname{Pf}^T(v_0, [0 = 1])$ ", abbreviated as "Con^T", to capture 1525 the formal assertion that T is consistent. He then showed that $T \not\models \operatorname{Con}^T$. In short we thus formalise the 1526 notions of "proof", "contradiction", "axiom" etc. within the theory T, starting with the formalisation of 1527 syntax that we have already effected. We are not going here to go down the route of investigating Gödel's 1528 proof in its entirety, however we can rather easily obtain a weak version of Gödel's Second Incompleteness 1529 Theorem which suffices for our purposes. (Compare the proof of Theorem 3.10) 1530

1531 THEOREM 3.26 (Gödel) $\operatorname{Con}(\operatorname{ZF}) \Rightarrow \operatorname{ZF} \not\models \exists x (\operatorname{Trans}(x) \land \langle x, \in \rangle \models [\operatorname{ZF}]).$

PROOF: Suppose σ abbreviates the sentence $\exists x (\operatorname{Trans}(x) \land \langle x, \epsilon \rangle \models \lceil ZF \rceil)$. Suppose that $ZF \vdash \sigma$. Then: $ZF \vdash \exists z (\operatorname{Trans}(z) \land \langle z, \epsilon \rangle \models \lceil ZF \rceil \land \forall w (\operatorname{Trans}(w) \land \rho(w) < \rho(z) \rightarrow \langle w, \epsilon \rangle \notin \lceil ZF \rceil)$ " (*)

Let z satisfy the last formula. By the last Corollary for any axiom φ of ZF we have $\varphi^{\langle z, \in \rangle}$. That is $(ZF)^{\langle z, \in \rangle}$. As $ZF \vdash \sigma$ we shall have that $(\sigma)^{\langle z, \in \rangle}$. In other words $(\exists x(\operatorname{Trans}(x) \land \langle x, \in \rangle \models \ulcorner ZF \urcorner))^{\langle z, \in \rangle}$. So let $y \in z$ satisfy this, namely

1537 $(\operatorname{Trans}(y) \land \langle y, \in \rangle \vDash [\operatorname{ZF}])^{\langle z, \in \rangle}.$

But this is a definite formula and so is absolute for the transitive structure (z, \in) as $(\mathbb{ZF}^{-})^{(z,\in)}$. Hence we really do have:

1540 $y \in z \wedge \operatorname{Trans}(y) \wedge \langle y, \in \rangle \models [ZF].$

But $\rho(y) < \rho(z)$. This contradicts (*). Hence ZF is inconsistent. Q.E.D.

1542

However, providing we have done our formalisation of ${}^{r}ZF^{}$ and $Pf^{T}(v_{0}, v_{1})$ *etc.* sensibly, we shall have that in ZF we can prove the Gödel *Completeness Theorem*: that any consistent set of sentences in any first order theory whatsoever has a model, and thus shall have:

1546
$$ZF \vdash \text{``Con}^{ZF} \longrightarrow \exists X, E[|X| = \omega \land \langle X, E \rangle \models [ZF]]$$
 (**)

But there is no indication that *E* should be the natural set membership relation on the countable set *X*, or that Trans(X). *X*, *E* arise simply from the proof of the Completeness Theorem. In general *E* will not be wellfounded, and will be completely artificial.

Taking this line further: if there is a set which is a transitive model of ZF, let us assume $\langle x, \in \rangle \in V$ is such. We additionally assume such an x is chosen of least rank. The assumed existence of $\langle x, \in \rangle$ implies Con^{ZF}, and as this latter assertion is expressed as a definite sentence, and $\langle x, \in \rangle$ is a transitive ZF^- model, we have $(Con^{ZF})^{\langle x, \in \rangle}$. By (**) $(\exists X, E[|X| = \omega \land \langle X, E \rangle \models [ZF^{T})^{\langle x, \in \rangle})$. Then the model $\langle X, E \rangle \in x$ *cannot* be a model with *E* wellfounded (it is an exercise to check this using $\rho(X) < \rho(x) - cf$. Ex. 3.16 below).

- 1556
- 1557

What we shall attempt with Gödel's construction of *L* is to show: (+) $Con(ZF) \Rightarrow Con(ZF + \Phi)$

where Φ will be various statements, such as AC or the GCH.

A statement such as the above (+) should be considered as a statement about the two axioms sets displayed: if the former derives no contradiction neither will the latter. The import is that if we regard ZF as "safe", as a theory, then so will be $ZF + \Phi$. (One usually claims that these arguments about the relative consistency of recursively given axiom sets are theorems of a particular kind in Number Theory and themselves can be formalised in PA - but we ignore that aspect.)

EXERCISE 3.13 (*) (*E*) We say that a set *x* is *outright definable* in a model $\langle M, E \rangle$ of ZFC if there is a formula $\varphi(v_0)$ with the only free variable shown, so that *x* is the unique set so that $(\varphi[x])^M$ holds. Suppose Con(ZFC). Show that there is a model $\langle M, E \rangle$ of ZFC in which every set is outright definable.

EXERCISE 3.14 (*) (*E*) Show that there is no formula $\varphi(v_0)$ with just the free variable v_0 so that $\{y \mid \varphi(y)\}$ is the class of outright definable (in (V, \in)) sets. [Hint: use a form of Richard's Paradox. Suppose there is such a φ . The least ordinal γ not outright definable is a countable ordinal, but now let $\psi(v_0)$ be " v_0 is an ordinal" $\land \forall v_1 < v_0 \varphi(v_1)$. Then $\gamma = \{\tau \mid \psi(\tau)\}$.]



Alfred Tarski (1902 Warsaw -1983 Berkeley, USA)

- EXERCISE 3.15 (**) (E) Suppose (M, E) is a model of ZF. Show that there is a (N, E') E M with (N, E') a model of ZF.
- EXERCISE 3.16 (**) (E) Suppose that there are transitive models of ZF. Let (x, \in) be such, chosen with $\rho(x)$
- 1574 least. Then (by Ex.3.15) if $\langle X, E \rangle \in x$ is such that $\langle X, E \rangle \models [ZF]$, show that $\langle X, E \rangle$ cannot be an ' ω -model', that

is $\omega^{(X,E)} \neq \omega$. (Thus (X, E) contains non-standard integers, and in particular codes for non-standard formulae.

¹⁵⁷⁶ More particularly still, $({}^{r}ZF^{})^{(X,E)}$ will contain non-standard axioms besides the standard ones.)

EXERCISE 3.17 (**) (E) Suppose the language \mathcal{L}_{δ} is the standard language of set theory augmented by a single constant symbol $\dot{\delta}$. Suppose we consider the following scheme of axioms Γ stated in \mathcal{L}_{δ} : for each axiom φ of ZFC we adopt the axiom φ_{δ} : $\forall \vec{x} (Fr(\varphi) \subseteq \vec{x} \longrightarrow (\varphi[\vec{x}])^{V_{\delta}} \longleftrightarrow \varphi[\vec{x}])$). (Thus φ is declared absolute for V_{δ} .) Γ consists of all the axioms φ_{δ} . Informally, taken together then, Γ says that $V_{\delta} < V$ where δ interprets $\dot{\delta}$. However the existence of a δ satisfying the latter relation is not provable in ZFC (by the Gödel Incompleteness Theorem). Nevertheless show that Con(ZFC) \Rightarrow CON(ZFC+ Γ). Why does this not contradict Gödel?

CHAPTER 4

THE CONSTRUCTIBLE HIERARCHY

In this chapter we define the constructible hierarchy due to Gödel, and prove its basic properties. Besides its original purpose used by Gödel to prove the relative consistency of AC and GCH to the other axioms of ZF, we can exploit properties of *L* to prove other theorems in algebra, analysis, and combinatorics. In set theory itself, properties of *L* can tell us a lot about *V* even if $V \neq L$.



Kurt Gödel (1906 Brno - 1983 Princeton, USA)

1590

4.1 The L_{α} -hierarchy

¹⁵⁹¹ We use the Def function to define a cumulative hierarchy based on the notion of *definable power set* ¹⁵⁹² operation: the Def function.

1593 DEFINITION 4.1 (Gödel) (*i*) $L_0 = \emptyset$; $L_{\alpha+1} = \text{Def}(\langle L_{\alpha}, \in \rangle;$ 1594 $\text{Lim}(\lambda) \longrightarrow L_{\lambda} = \bigcup \{L_{\alpha} \mid \alpha < \lambda\}.$ 1595 (*ii*) $L = \bigcup \{L_{\alpha} \mid \alpha < \text{On}\}.$

1583

1584

1596 LEMMA 4.2 The term L_{α} is definite, and hence absolute for transitive W satisfying $(ZF^{-})^{W}$.

¹⁵⁹⁷ PROOF: The Def function is definite and the $\alpha \rightarrow L_{\alpha}$ function is defined by definite recursion from it. ¹⁵⁹⁸ Q.E.D.

We thus have defined a class term function $F(\alpha) = L_{\alpha}$ by a transfinite recursion on On, and so also the term *L* itself. It is natural to define the notion of "constructible rank" or *L*-rank, by analogy with ordinary *V*-rank.

1603 DEFINITION 4.3 For $x \in L$ we define the L-rank of x, $\rho_L(x) =_{df}$ the least α so that $x \in L_{\alpha+1}$.

¹⁶⁰⁴ We give some of the basic properties of the L_{α} -hierarchy. Many are familiar properties common with ¹⁶⁰⁵ the V_{α} -hierarchy: all of the following are true with L_{α} replaced by V_{α} .

1606 LEMMA 4.4 (i) $\beta < \alpha \longrightarrow L_{\beta} \subseteq L_{\alpha};$ 1607 (ii) $\beta < \alpha \longrightarrow L_{\beta} \in L_{\alpha};$

1608 (*iii*) Trans(L_{α});

1609 $(iv) \alpha = \rho(L_{\alpha});$

1610 $(v) \alpha = \operatorname{On} \cap L_{\alpha}.$

1611 Hence $\operatorname{Trans}(L)$ and $\operatorname{On} \subseteq L$.

¹⁶¹² PROOF: We prove this by a simultaneous induction for (i)-(v). These are trivial for $\alpha = 0$. Suppose ¹⁶¹³ proven for α and we show they hold for $\alpha + 1$.

(i): It suffices to prove that $L_{\alpha} \subseteq L_{\alpha+1}$ since by the inductive hypothesis, for $\delta < \alpha$ we already know $L_{\delta} \subseteq L_{\alpha}$. (Actually this is just an instance of Lemma 3.19(ii), noting that $\text{Trans}(L_{\alpha})$ by (iii), but we prove it again.) Let $x \in L_{\alpha}$. By (iii) for α , $\text{Trans}(L_{\alpha})$ and hence $x \subseteq L_{\alpha}$.

$$x = \{y \in L_{\alpha} | \langle L_{\alpha}, \epsilon \rangle \models \lceil v_0 \in v_1 \rceil [y, x] \} \in \operatorname{Def}(\langle L_{\alpha}, \epsilon \rangle) = L_{\alpha+1}$$

(ii) Again it suffices to show that $L_{\alpha} \in L_{\alpha+1}$. However $L_{\alpha} \in \text{Def}(\langle L_{\alpha}, \in \rangle)$ by Lemma 3.19 (i).

1615 (iii) $L_{\alpha+1} \subseteq \mathcal{P}(L_{\alpha})$ hence $x \in L_{\alpha+1} \longrightarrow x \subseteq L_{\alpha} \subseteq L_{\alpha+1}$ by (i).

(iv) By the inductive hypothesis $\rho(L_{\alpha}) = \alpha$. By (ii) $L_{\alpha} \in L_{\alpha+1}$, hence $\alpha = \rho(L_{\alpha}) < \rho(L_{\alpha+1})$. Hence $\alpha + 1 \le \rho(L_{\alpha+1})$. For the reverse inequality note that: $x \in L_{\alpha+1} \longrightarrow x \subseteq L_{\alpha}$, and so $\rho(x) \le \rho(L_{\alpha}) = \alpha$. This means that

1619 ρ(

 $\rho(L_{\alpha+1}) =_{df} \sup\{\rho(x) + 1 \mid x \in L_{\alpha+1}\} \le \alpha + 1.$

(v) By the inductive hypothesis and (i) $\alpha \subseteq L_{\alpha} \subseteq L_{\alpha+1}$, so it suffices to show that $\alpha \in L_{\alpha+1}$ in order to show that $\alpha + 1 \subseteq L_{\alpha+1}$. Thus:

$$\alpha = \{\delta \in L_{\alpha} \mid \delta \in \mathrm{On}\} = \{\delta \in L_{\alpha} \mid \langle L_{\alpha}, \epsilon \rangle \vDash \lceil v_0 \doteq \mathrm{On}^{\mathsf{T}}[\delta]\} \in \mathrm{Def}(\langle L_{\alpha}, \epsilon \rangle) = L_{\alpha+1}.$$

1620 That $On \cap L_{\alpha+1} \subseteq \alpha + 1$: $On \cap L_{\alpha+1} \subseteq \{\delta \in On \mid \rho(\delta) < \alpha + 1\}$ by (iv). But the latter is just $\alpha + 1$.

We now assume $\text{Lim}(\lambda)$ and (i)-(v) hold for $\alpha < \lambda$. Then (i)-(iii) and (v) are immediate. For (iv) : $\rho(L_{\lambda}) = \sup\{\rho(x) + 1 \mid x \in L_{\lambda}\} \le \sup\{\alpha \mid \alpha \in \lambda\} = \lambda$. Conversely $\lambda \subseteq L_{\lambda} \longrightarrow \rho(L_{\lambda}) \ge \lambda$. Q.E.D.

1599

1623 LEMMA 4.5 (*i*) For all $\alpha \in \text{On}$, $\rho_L(\alpha) = \rho(\alpha) = \alpha$. 1624 (*ii*) For $n \le \omega$ $L_n = V_n$. 1625 (*iii*) For all $\alpha \ge \omega |L_\alpha| = |\alpha|$.

PROOF: (i) and (ii): Exercise. For (iii) we prove this by induction on α . For $\alpha = \omega$ this follows from (ii) and $|V_{\omega}| = \omega$. Suppose proven for α . $|L_{\alpha+1}| = |\operatorname{Def}(\langle L_{\alpha}, \in \rangle)| = |L_{\alpha}| = |\alpha| = |\alpha+1|$ by lemma 3.19 (iv). For $\operatorname{Lim}(\lambda)$: $|L_{\lambda}| = |\bigcup_{\alpha < \lambda} L_{\alpha}| \le |\lambda| \cdot |\lambda| = |\lambda|$ as by the inductive hypothesis $|L_{\alpha}| = |\alpha| \le |\lambda|$ for $\alpha < \lambda$. Q.E.D.

1630 EXERCISE 4.1 (i) Verify that for all $\alpha \in On$, $\rho_L(\alpha) = \rho(\alpha) = \alpha$ (ii) Prove that for $n \le \omega L_n = V_n$.

Remark: (i) shows that as far as ordinals go, they appear at the same stage in the *L*-hierarchy as in the *V*-hierarchy. However it is important to note that this is not the case for all constructible sets: there are constructible subsets of ω that are not in $L_{\omega+1}$.

¹⁶³⁴ DEFINITION 4.6 (*i*) Let T be a set of axioms in \mathcal{L} . Let W be a class term. Then W is an inner model of T, ¹⁶³⁵ *if* (a) Trans(W); (b) On \subseteq W; (c) $(T)^W$, that is, for each σ in T, $(\sigma)^W$.

(*ii*) If (*i*) holds we write IM(W, T) and if T is ZF then simply IM(W).

1637 THEOREM 4.7 (Gödel) *L* is an inner model of ZF, IM(L). In particular $(ZF)^L$.

Remark: again this is to be read as saying: for each axiom φ of ZF, ZF $\vdash (\varphi)^L$. PROOF: We already have (a) and (b) by Lemma 4.4, so it remains to show $(ZF)^L$. We justify this by considering each axiom (or axiom schema) in turn. We use all the time, without comment the fact that each L_{α} is transitive.

1642 Ax 0 *Empty* is trivial as $\emptyset = \emptyset^L \in L$.

Ax1: *Extensionality*: This is Lemma 1.21, since we have Trans(L).

Ax2: *Pairing Axiom* Let $x, y \in L_{\alpha}$. Then

1645 $\{x, y\} = \{z \in L_{\alpha} \mid \langle L_{\alpha}, \in \rangle \vDash \lceil v_0 \doteq v_1 \lor v_0 \doteq v_2 \rceil [z/0, x/1, y/2]\} \in \operatorname{Def}(L_{\alpha}) = L_{\alpha+1} \subseteq L.$

By Lemma 1.24 then Ax2 holds in L.

1647 Ax3 *Union Axion* Let $x \in L_{\alpha}$. This follows from Lemma 1.25 once we show:

1648 $\bigcup x = \{z \in L_{\alpha} \mid \langle L_{\alpha}, \in \rangle \models \exists v_1(v_1 \in v_2 \land v_0 \in v_1 \exists z/0, x/2]\} \in \operatorname{Def}(L_{\alpha}).$

¹⁶⁴⁹ Ax4 *Foundation Scheme* Let *a* be a term. Then:

 $(a \neq \emptyset \longrightarrow (\exists x \in a(x \cap a = \emptyset)))^L \leftrightarrow (a^L \neq \emptyset \longrightarrow \exists x \in a^L(x \cap a^L = \emptyset)).$ But the right hand side of the equivalence here is simply an instance of the Foundation scheme in *V* and thus is true.

Ax5 Separation Scheme Again let *a* be a class term. Suppose

$$a = \{z | \varphi(z/0, y_1/1, \dots, y_n/n)\}.$$

Suppose $x, \vec{y} \in L_{\gamma}$. We apply Lemma 2.40 to the hierarchy $Z_{\alpha} = L_{\alpha}, Z = L$ to obtain a $\beta > \gamma$ so that $ZF \vdash \forall z \in L_{\beta}((\varphi(z, y_1, \dots, y_n))^L \leftrightarrow (\varphi(z, y_1, \dots, y_n))^{L_{\beta}})).$

By the Correctness Theorem 3.21

$$(\varphi(z, y_1, \ldots, y_n))^{L_{\beta}} \leftrightarrow \langle L_{\beta}, \in \rangle \models \ulcorner \varphi^{\urcorner}[z, y_1, \ldots, y_n].$$

¹⁶⁵⁴ Hence, putting it all together:

1655 $\{z \in x \mid \varphi(z, y_1, \dots, y_n)\}^L = \{z \in x \mid \varphi(z, y_1, \dots, y_n)^{L_\beta}\} =$

 $= \{z \in L_{\beta} \mid \langle L_{\beta}, \in \rangle \models \ulcorner \varphi \land v_0 \in v_{n+1} \urcorner [z, y_1, \dots, y_n, x] \} \in \operatorname{Def}(L_{\beta}).$

Ax6 **Replacement Scheme** Suppose f is a term, $x \in L$, and $\operatorname{Fun}(f)^L$. Let ρ_L be the constructible rank function. Then by the Replacement Scheme (in V) ($\rho_L \circ f^L$)" $x \in V$. Let α be its supremum. Then f^{L} " $x \subseteq L_{\alpha}$. Let $\beta \ge \alpha$ be sufficiently large so that by the Reflection Theorem

1660 $\operatorname{ZF} \vdash \forall y, z \in L_{\beta}((f(z) = y)^{L} \leftrightarrow (f(z) = y)^{L_{\beta}})).$

¹⁶⁶¹ Then again using the Correctness theorem we have that

$$f^{L^{\prime\prime}}x = \{y \in L_{\beta} | \langle L_{\beta}, \epsilon \rangle \models \exists v_1 \in v_2(f(v_1) = v_0)^{\uparrow} [y/0, x/2] \} \in \operatorname{Def}(L_{\beta}).$$

Ax7 *Infinity Axiom* Just note that
$$\omega \in L_{\omega+1}$$
.

Since we have shown the requisite sets are all in L we apply the appropriate cases of Lemma 1.25 and conclude Ax3,5,6,7 hold in L. We are thus left with:

1666 Ax8 **PowerSet Axiom**
$$(\forall x \exists y (y = \mathcal{P}(x)))^L \leftrightarrow (\forall x \exists y \forall z (z \subseteq x \leftrightarrow z \in y))^L \leftrightarrow \forall x \in L \exists y \in L \forall z \in L (z \subseteq x \leftrightarrow z \in y)$$

1668
$$\leftrightarrow \forall x \in L \exists y \in L(y = \mathcal{P}(x) \cap L).$$

So we verify the latter: let $x \in L$ be arbitrary. $\mathcal{P}(x) \cap L \in V$ by Axiom of Power and Separation in V. By Ax.Replacement $\rho_L \mathcal{P}(x) \cap L \in V$. Let α be its supremum. Then, as required:

1671
$$\mathcal{P}(x) \cap L = \{ z \in L_{\alpha} | \langle L_{\alpha}, \epsilon \rangle \models \lceil v_0 \leq v_1 \rceil [z, x] \} \in \mathrm{Def}(L_{\alpha}).$$
Q.E.D.

¹⁶⁷³ Suppose we define $IM_0(W)$ to be the variant on IM(W) that, keeping (a) and (b), replaces (c) by ¹⁶⁷⁴ the statement that " $\forall x \subseteq W \exists y \in V(x \subseteq y \land Trans(y) \land Def(\langle y, \in \rangle \subseteq W)$ " then a close reading of the ¹⁶⁷⁵ last proof reveals that we in fact may show:

1676 THEOREM 4.8 Suppose W is a class term and $IM_0(W)$. then IM(W).

1677 EXERCISE 4.2 (*) (E) Prove this last theorem.

EXERCISE 4.3 Show that "*x is a cardinal*" and "*x is regular*" are downward absolute from *V* to *L*. Deduce that if κ is a (regular) limit cardinal then (κ is a (regular) limit cardinal)^{*L*}.

1680

4.2 The Axiom of Choice in L

The very regular construction of the L_{α} -hierarchy ensures that the Axiom of Choice will hold in the con-1681 structible universe L. Indeed, it holds in a very strong form: whereas the Axiom of Choice is equivalent 1682 to the statement that any set can be wellordered, for L there is a class term that wellorders the whole 1683 universe of L in one stroke. Essentially what is at the heart of the matter is that we may wellorder the 1684 countably many formulae of the language \mathcal{L} , and then inductively define a wellorder $<_{\alpha+1}$ for $L_{\alpha+1}$ using 1685 a wellorder $<_{\alpha}$ for L_{α} . This latter wellorder $<_{\alpha}$ gives us a way of ordering all finite k-tuples of elements 1686 of L_{α} , and thus, putting these together, we get a wellorder of all possible definitions that go into making 1687 up new objects in $L_{\alpha+1}$. We shall additionally have that the ordering $<_{\alpha+1}$ end-extends that of $<_{\alpha}$. This 1688 means that if $y \in L_{\alpha+1} \setminus L_{\alpha}$ then for no $x \in L_{\alpha}$ do we have that $y <_{\alpha+1} x$. Taking $<_L = \bigcup_{\alpha \in On} <_{\alpha}$ gives us 1689 the term for a global wellordering of all of L. We now proceed to fill out this sketch. 1690

Let $x \in V$ and suppose we are given a wellorder $<_x$ of x. We define from this a wellorder $<_{Q_x}$. For $f \in Q_x$ we let $lh(f) =_{df}$ the least n so that $\forall m \ge n(f(m) = f(n))$. We then define for $f, g \in Q_x$:

1693 1694

$$f <_{Q_x} g \longleftrightarrow_{\mathrm{df}} \mathrm{lh}(f) < \mathrm{lh}(g) \lor (\mathrm{lh}(f) = \mathrm{lh}(g) \land \exists k \le \mathrm{lh}(f) (\forall n < kf(n) = g(n) \land f(k) <_x g(k))).$$

1695 EXERCISE 4.4 Check that if $<_x \in$ WO then $<_{Q_x} \in$ WO. Moreover $<_{Q_x}$ is definite.

We now suppose we also have fixed an ordering $\varphi_0, \varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_n, \dots$ of the countably many elements of Fml which have at least ν_0 amongst their free variables (we may define such a listing from any map $g: \omega \leftrightarrow Fml$). We assume that the function f given by $f(n) = \lceil \varphi_n \rceil$ is a definite term.

1699 DEFINITION 4.9 We define by recursion the ordering $<_{\alpha}$ of L_{α} . $<_{0}= \emptyset$; let $x, y \in L_{\alpha+1}$: 1700 $x <_{\alpha+1} y \leftrightarrow_{df}$ 1701 $(x \in L_{\alpha} \land y \notin L_{\alpha}) \lor (x, y \in L_{\alpha} \land x <_{\alpha} y) \lor (x, y \notin L_{\alpha} \land \exists n \in \omega \exists f \in Q_{L_{\alpha}}(x = \iota(L_{\alpha}, \varphi_{n}, f) \land \forall m \in \omega \forall g \in Q_{L_{\alpha}}(y = \iota(L_{\alpha}, \varphi_{m}, g) \longrightarrow n < m \lor (m = n \land f <_{Q_{L_{\alpha}}} g)))).$

 $\begin{array}{l} \text{1702} \qquad \qquad \forall m \in \omega \forall g \in Q_{L_{\alpha}}(y = \iota(L_{\alpha}, \varphi_m, g) \longrightarrow n < m \lor (m = n \land f <_{Q_{L_{\alpha}}} g)))). \\ \text{1703} \quad \text{Lim}(\lambda) \longrightarrow <_{\lambda} = \bigcup_{\alpha < \lambda} <_{\alpha}; \quad <_{L} =_{\text{df}} \bigcup_{\alpha \in \text{On}} <_{\alpha}. \end{array}$

1704 LEMMA 4.10 (i) $<_{\alpha}$ is definite; (ii) the ordering $<_{\beta}$ is a wellordering and end-extends $<_{\alpha}$ if $\alpha \leq \beta$; (iii) if κ 1705 is an infinite cardinal then $<_{\kappa}$ has order type κ ; $<_{L}$ has order type On. Thus $(AC)^{L}$.

1706 PROOF: (i) $f(\alpha) =_{df} <_{\alpha}$ is defined by a definite recursion. (ii) By an obvious induction on α . (iii) 1707 Exercise. Q.E.D.

EXERCISE 4.5 Show that $ot(L_{\kappa}, <_{\kappa}) = \kappa$ for κ an infinite cardinal; deduce that $ot(L, <_{L}) = On$.

4.3 THE AXIOM OF CONSTRUCTIBILITY

1710 DEFINITION 4.11 The Axiom of Constructibility is the assertion "V = L" which abbreviates " $\forall x \exists \alpha x \in L_{\alpha}$."

The Axiom of Constructibility thus says that every set appears somewhere in this hierarchy. Since the model *L* is defined by a restricted use of the power set operation, many set theorists feel that the Def function is too restricted a method of building *all* sets. Nevertheless, the *inner model L* of the constructible sets, possesses a very rich structure.

LEMMA 4.12 (i) Let W be a transitive class term, and suppose $(ZF^{-})^{W}$. Then

$$(L)^{W} = L \quad if \text{ On } \cap W = \text{On}$$
$$= L_{\theta} \quad if \text{ On } \cap W = \theta.$$

(*ii*) There is a finite conjunction σ_1 of ZF⁻ axioms, so that in (*i*) the requirement that $(ZF^-)^W$ can be replaced by $(\sigma_1)^W$ and the conclusion is unaltered. PROOF: (i) The function term L_{α} is definite. Hence is absolute for such a W. Note that in the case that $On \cap W = \theta \in On$ then indeed $Lim(\theta)$. But in either case for any $\alpha \in W(L_{\alpha})^W = L_{\alpha}$. Hence

$$(L)^{W} = (\bigcup \{L_{\alpha} | \alpha \in \mathrm{On}\})^{W} = \bigcup \{L_{\alpha} | \alpha \in \mathrm{On} \cap W\}$$

¹⁷¹⁷ which yields the above result.

(ii) σ_1 is simply the conjunction of sufficiently many axioms needed for the proof that the function term L_{α} is definite, plus "*there is no largest ordinal*". Q.E.D.

1720 COROLLARY 4.13 (ZF) $(V = L)^L$.

PROOF: Trans(L) and $(ZF^{-})^{L}$. But $(V = L)^{L} \leftrightarrow V^{L} = L^{L}$. As $V^{L} = L$ and by Lemma 4.12 $(L)^{L} = L$ we are done. Q.E.D.

1723 THEOREM 4.14
$$\operatorname{Con}(\operatorname{ZF}) \Rightarrow \operatorname{Con}(\operatorname{ZF} + V = L).$$

1724	PROOF: Suppose $ZF + V =$	<i>L</i> is inconsistent. Suppose $ZF + V = L \vdash (\varphi \land \neg \varphi)$.	
1725	$ZF \vdash (ZF + V = L)^L$	by the last Corollary and Theorem 4.7, then:	
1726	$\mathrm{ZF} dash (arphi \wedge eg arphi)^L$,	and hence:	
1727	$\operatorname{ZF} \vdash \varphi^L \wedge (\neg \varphi)^L.$	Hence:	
1728	$\operatorname{ZF} \vdash \varphi^L \wedge \neg(\varphi^L).$	Hence ZF is inconsistent.	Q.E.D.

REMARK 4.15 P. Cohen (1962) showed $Con(ZF) \Rightarrow Con(ZF+V \neq L)$ by an entirely different method, that of "*forcing*". This method can be construed as either constructing models in a Boolean valued (rather than a 2-valued) logic; or else akin to some kind of syntactic method of construction. (An entirely different method was needed - see Exercise 4.7.) He further showed that $Con(ZF) \Rightarrow Con(ZF+\neg AC)$ and $Con(ZF) \Rightarrow Con(ZF+\neg CH)$. His methods are now much elaborated to prove a wealth of "*relative consistency*" statements such as these.

1735 THEOREM 4.16 (Gödel 1939) $Con(ZF) \Rightarrow Con(ZF + AC)$

PROOF: We have shown $ZF \vdash (AC)^L$, but also $ZF \vdash (ZF)^L$, and thus $ZF \vdash (ZF + AC)^L$, Hence if $ZF + AC \vdash \varphi \land \neg \varphi$ for some φ then we should have $ZF \vdash (\varphi \land \neg \varphi)^L$ as in the last proof, and hence not Con(ZF). Q.E.D.

EXERCISE 4.6 Suppose there is a transitive set model of ZFC. Show that there is a *minimal (transitive) model* of ZFC, that is for some countable ordinal β_0 , $L_{\beta_0} \models [ZFC]$ and that L_{β_0} is a subclass of any other such transitive set model of ZF.

1742 4.4 The Generalised Continuum Hypothesis in L.

¹⁷⁴³ We first prove a simple lemma, but one of great utility.

LEMMA 4.17 (The Condensation Lemma) Suppose $\langle x, \in \rangle \prec \langle L_{\alpha}, \in \rangle$ where $(\mathbb{ZF}^{-})^{L_{\alpha}}$ (or just $(\sigma_{1})^{L}$ where σ_{1} is the finite conjunction of axioms from Lemma 4.12). Then there is $\gamma \leq \alpha$ with $\langle x, \in \rangle \cong \langle L_{\gamma}, \in \rangle$. PROOF: By assumption on α we have $(\sigma_1)^{L_{\alpha}}$, and so by the Correctness Lemma, we have that $\langle L_{\alpha}, \in \rangle \models$ $V = L^{2}$. Hence $\langle x, \in \rangle \models V = L^{2}$. Let $\pi : \langle x, \in \rangle \longrightarrow \langle y, \in \rangle$ be the Mostowski Shepherdson Collapse with Trans(y). Then $\langle y, \in \rangle \models \sigma_1^{2} \land V = L^{2}$ (as π is an isomorphism). By the first conjunct, Correctness again, and Lemma 4.12, $L^{y} = L \cap y = L_{On \cap y}$. But by the second, this equals y itself. So we may take $\gamma = On \cap y$. Q.E.D.

1751

¹⁷⁵² Note: It can be shown that the assumption that $(ZF^{-})^{L_{\alpha}}$ can be very much reduced: all that is needed ¹⁷⁵³ for the conclusion of the lemma is that $Lim(\alpha)$, and with a lot more fiddling around even this condition ¹⁷⁵⁴ can be dropped, and we have Condensation holding for every L_{α} .

1755 THEOREM 4.18 ZF \vdash ($\omega \leq \kappa \in \text{Card} \longrightarrow H_{\kappa} = L_{\kappa}$)^L. Hence ZF \vdash (GCH)^L and thus ZF $+V = L \vdash$ GCH.

PROOF: We have that $L_{\omega} = V_{\omega} = H_{\omega}$ already and hence the conclusion for $\kappa = \omega$. Assume $(\omega < \kappa \in L_{1757} \text{ Card})^L$. If $\alpha < \kappa$ then by Lemma 4.5(iii) $(|L_{\alpha}| = |\alpha| < \kappa)^L$. Hence $(L_{\alpha} \in H_{\kappa})^L$. Thus $(L_{\kappa} \subseteq H_{\kappa})^L$. Now for the reverse inclusion suppose $(z \in H_{\kappa})^L$. Find an α sufficiently large with $\{z\}$, $\operatorname{TC}(z) \in L_{\alpha}$ and by the Reflection Theorem $(\sigma_1)^{L_{\alpha}}$. As $z \in H_{\kappa} \longrightarrow \operatorname{TC}(z) \in H_{\kappa}$, we may apply the Downward Löwenheim-Skolem theorem in L and find $\langle x, \epsilon \rangle < \langle L_{\alpha}, \epsilon \rangle$ with $\operatorname{TC}(\{z\}) = \operatorname{TC}(z) \cup \{z\} \subseteq x$, and $|z_{1751} = |z_{1752} = |z_{1753} = |z$

As the transitive part of *x* contains all of TC($\{z\}$), we have that $\pi(z) = z$ where π is the transitive collapse map mentioned in the Condensation Lemma, taking $\pi : \langle x, \in \rangle \longrightarrow \langle y, \in \rangle = \langle L_{\gamma}, \in \rangle$ for some $\gamma \leq \alpha$. However we know that $(|x| = |L_{\gamma}| = |\gamma| < \kappa)^L$ by design. Hence $z \in L_{\gamma} \in L_{\kappa}$.

As $z \in (H_{\kappa})^{L}$ was arbitrary we conclude that $(L_{\kappa} \supseteq H_{\kappa})^{L}$. We thus have shown $(H_{\kappa} = L_{\kappa})^{L}$. To show (GCH)^{*L*} it suffices to show that for all infinite cardinals κ that $(2^{\kappa} = \kappa^{+})^{L}$. However $2^{\kappa} \approx \mathcal{P}(\kappa)$ and $(\mathcal{P}(\kappa) \subseteq H_{\kappa^{+}} = L_{\kappa^{+}})^{L}$. Hence $(|\mathcal{P}(\kappa)| \le |L_{\kappa^{+}}| = \kappa^{+})^{L}$. By Cantor's Theorem we conclude $(|\mathcal{P}(\kappa)| = 1)^{1/10} \kappa^{+})^{L}$.

This argument establishes that $ZF \vdash (GCH)^L$. If we additionally assume V = L we have the conclusion of the Theorem. Q.E.D.

1771

1772 The proof of the next is identical to that of Cor. 4.16:

1773 COROLLARY 4.19 (Gödel 1939) $Con(ZF) \Rightarrow Con(ZF + GCH)$.

EXERCISE 4.7 (E) (Shepherdson) Show that there is no class term W so that $ZFC \vdash IM(W)$ and $ZFC \vdash (\neg CH)^W$. [This Exercise shows that Gödel's argument was essentially a "one-off": there is no way one can define in ZFC alone an inner model and hope that it is a model of all of ZF plus, *e.g.*, \neg CH.]

EXERCISE 4.8 Show that if there is a weakly inaccessible cardinal κ then $(ZFC)^{L_{\kappa}}$. Hence $ZFC \neq \exists \kappa (\kappa \text{ a weakly} inaccessible cardinal.)$ [Hint: Use the fact that $(GCH)^{L}$.]

EXERCISE 4.9 Show that if κ is weakly inaccessible then $\forall \alpha < \kappa \exists \beta < \kappa (\beta > \alpha \land L_{\beta} \models [ZFC])$. [Hint: use the Condensation Lemma and Downward Löwenheim-Skolem Theorem.]

1781 EXERCISE 4.10 Assume V = L. When does $L_{\alpha} = V_{\alpha}$?

EXERCISE 4.11 (E)(*) Show that if $\alpha < \omega_1$ is any limit ordinal, which is countable in *L*, then there is β , countable in 1782 L, so that $\mathcal{P}(\omega) \cap L_{\beta} = \mathcal{P}(\omega) \cap L_{\beta+\alpha}$. [This shows that there are arbitrarily long countable 'gaps' in the constructible 1783 hierarchy, where no new real numbers appear, although by the GCH proof all constructible reals will have appeared 1784 by stage $(\omega_1)^L$. Hint: Suppose V = L, and look at the countable set $X = \{\omega_\delta | \delta < \alpha\}$. Let $\mathfrak{A} = \{L_{\omega_{\alpha+1}}, \in\}$ and, by the 1785 Downward Löwenheim-Skolem Theorem, let $Y \supseteq X \cup \alpha + 1$ be a countable elementary substructure of \mathfrak{A} : $Y < \mathfrak{A}$. 1786 Let $\pi : Y \longrightarrow M$ be the transitive collapse of Y and as in the GCH proof, $M = L_{\gamma}$ for some γ . Consider $\beta = \pi(\omega_1)$.] 1787 EXERCISE 4.12 Show that (i) if κ is a weakly inaccessible cardinal, then (κ is strongly inaccessible)^L; (ii) if κ is a 1788 weakly Mahlo cardinal, then (κ is strongly Mahlo)^L.[Hint: See Exercises 4.3 & 4.8. For (ii) show that the property 1789 of being cub in κ is preserved upwards from L to V.] 1790 EXERCISE 4.13 (i) Let $(x, \in) < L_{\omega_1}$ where $\omega_1 = (\omega_1)^L$. Show that already $\operatorname{Trans}(x)$ and so $x = L_{\gamma}$ for some $\gamma \leq \omega_1$. 1791 [Hint: For $\delta < \omega_1$ note that $(|\delta| = |L_{\delta}| = \omega)^{L_{\omega_1}}$. Hence for $\delta \in x$, in L_{ω_1} , and thus in x, there is an onto map 1792 $f: \omega \longrightarrow L_{\delta}$. Thus, as $\omega \subseteq x \land f \in x$ we deduce that $ran(f) = L_{\delta} \subseteq x$. Deduce that Trans(x).] 1793 (ii) (*) Now let $\langle x, \in \rangle < L_{\omega_2}$ where $\omega_2 = (\omega_2)^L$. Show that $\operatorname{Trans}(x \cap L_{\omega_1})$ and so $x \cap L_{\omega_1} = L_{\gamma}$ for some γ . 1794 EXERCISE 4.14 (*) Assume V = L. N. Schweber defined a countable ordinal τ to be *memorable* if for all sufficiently 1795 large $\beta < \omega_1, \tau \in \text{Def}_0(\langle L_\beta, \in \rangle)$. Show: 1796 (i) The memorable ordinals form a countable, so proper, initial segment of (ω_1, \in) . 1797 (ii) Let δ be the least non-memorable ordinal. Show that δ is also the least ordinal η so that for arbitrarily large 1798 $\gamma < \omega_1, L_{\eta} < L_{\gamma}.$ 1799

1800

4.5 Ordinal Definable sets and HOD

Gödel's method of defining the inner model L of constructible sets was not the only way to obtain the 1801 consistency of the Axiom of Choice with the other axioms of ZF. Another model can be defined, the inner 1802 model of the hereditarily ordinal definable sets or "HOD" in which the AC can be shown to hold. (The 1803 GCH is not provably true there, and the absoluteness of the construction of L - which allowed us to show 1804 that $L^L = L$ is not available: it is consistent that $HOD^{HOD} \neq HOD$.) We investigate the basics here. There 1805 is some evidence that Gödel was aware of this approach, as he suggested looking at the ordinal definable 1806 sets for a model of AC. However the construction requires essential use of the Reflection Theorem that 1807 was not proven until the end of the 1950's by Levy and Montague. Some see these remarks of Gödel as 1808 indicating that he was aware of the Reflection Principle, even if he did not publish a proof. 1809

DEFINITION 4.20 We say that a set z is ordinal definable $(z \in OD)$ if and only if for some formula $\varphi(v_0, v_1, \dots, v_m)$ with free variables shown, for some ordinals $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ then z is the unique set so that $\varphi[z, \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m]$.

We next need to show that the expression $z \in OD$ is definable within *ZF*. (At the moment the last definition has loosely talked about "definability (in $\langle V, \in \rangle$)" - which is not definable in $\langle V, \in \rangle$.) We do this by showing it is equivalent to the alternative definition given in Def.3.20, which involved only the definable sets V_{β} and the definable function Def₀(x).

EXERCISE 4.15 (Richard's Paradox) Let *T* be the set of those *z* so that for some closed term $\{x \mid t\}$ (that is one without free variables) $z = \{x \mid t\}$. Show that there is no formula $\psi(v_0)$ (with just the one free variable shown), so that $T = \{z \mid \psi[z]\}$, and thus *T* is not definable by such a formula. [Hint: as there are only countably many closed terms, there will only be countably many ordinals in *T*. Suppose for a contradiction that $\psi(v_0)$ does define the set of elements of *T* (meaning that it is true of just the elements of *T*). Consider the term $\{\alpha \mid \forall \beta \le \alpha(\psi[\beta])\}$.] EXERCISE 4.16 Let $\vec{\gamma} = \gamma_0, \dots, \gamma_{n-1} \in {}^n On$ for some *n*. Then there is β so that $\vec{\gamma} \in \text{Def}_0(V_\beta)$. [Hint: Let $<^n$ be the wellorder of ${}^n On$ as above at Ex. 1.10. Let $\varphi_0(\vec{\alpha})$ express " $\vec{\alpha}$ is the $<^n$ -least sequence so that $\forall \beta \ (\vec{\alpha} \notin \text{Def}_0(V_\beta))$ ". But if $\varphi_0(\vec{\alpha})$ were true, it would reflect to some δ . But then $\vec{\alpha} \in \text{Def}_0(V_\delta)$.]

EXERCISE 4.17 (Scott) For any formula $\psi(v_0, \ldots, v_{m-1})$ with free variables v_0, \ldots, v_{m-1} ,

 $ZF \vdash \forall \alpha_0, \dots, \alpha_{n-1} \exists \beta(\alpha_0, \dots, \alpha_{n-1} \in \text{Def}_0(V_\beta) \land \forall x_0, \dots, x_{m-1} \psi(x_0, \dots, x_{m-1}) \leftrightarrow (\psi(x_0, \dots, x_{m-1}))^{V_\beta}).$

[Hint: Another use of the Richard Paradox argument. Expand Ex.4.16 using the formula φ_0 there: suppose the displayed formula is false for some $<^n$ -least $\alpha_0, \ldots, \alpha_{n-1}$. Let β be any sufficiently large ordinal that reflects $\varphi_0 \wedge \psi$.

As in Ex.4.16, $\alpha_0, \ldots, \alpha_{n-1} \in \text{Def}_0(V_\beta)$ and V_β reflects ψ too.]

1828 THEOREM 4.21 $z \in OD$ is expressible by the single formula in ZF: $\varphi_{OD}(z)$: " $\exists \beta (z \in Def_0(V_\beta))$ ".

PROOF: Let OD^* denote the class of sets z satisfying the Definition 3.20, that is the formula $\varphi_{OD}(z)$ above. It suffices to show then $OD^* = OD$. (\subseteq) is clear. Suppose x is the unique set satisfying $\varphi[x, \alpha_0, \ldots, \alpha_{n-1}]$. By Ex. 4.17 there is β with $\alpha_0, \ldots, \alpha_{n-1} \in Def_0(V_\beta)$ and V_β reflects φ with $x \in V_\beta$. Then $\varphi[x, \alpha_0, \ldots, \alpha_{n-1}]$ defines x in V_β . But amalgamating the definitions of the sequence $\vec{\alpha}$ with that given by φ we have a definition $\varphi'[x]$ in V_β without the use of ordinal parameters. Thus $x \in Def_0(V_\beta)$. Q.E.D.

1834 THEOREM 4.22 OD has a definable wellordering.

PROOF: We use a definable wellorder $\langle {}^{HF}$ of HF to impose a wellordering on the Gödel code sets of formulae with one free variable. As $OD = \{z \mid \exists \beta(z \in Def_0(V_\beta))\}$ for any $z \in OD$ we can set $\beta(z) =_{df}$ the least β so that $z \in Def_0(V_\beta)$. Let ϕ_z be the least, in the ordering $\langle {}^{HF}$, formula with the single free variable v_0 , that defines z in $V_{\beta(z)}$.

Now define

$$x <_{OD} z \Leftrightarrow x, z \in OD \land (\beta(x) < \beta(z) \lor (\beta(x) = \beta(z) \land \phi_x <^{HF} \phi_z)).$$

¹⁸³⁹ One can check this is a wellorder of *OD*.

LEMMA 4.23 Let A be any class that has a definable set-like wellorder given by some $\varphi(v_0, v_1)$ ("set-like" meaning for any $z_0 \in A$, $\{z \in A \mid \varphi(z, z_0)\}$ is a set). Then $A \subseteq OD$.

PROOF: By assumption we can define by recursion a rank function $r(z) = \sup\{r(y)+1 \mid y \in A \land \varphi(y, z)\}$. Then ran $(r) \subseteq On$. But now for each $z \in A$ for some α we have $r(z) = \alpha$ and we may define z as "that unique z with $r(z) = \alpha$ ". Q.E.D.

¹⁸⁴⁶ PROOF: By Ex. 4.5 the ordering $<_L$ of *L* is both definable and a wellorder in order type *On*. It is thus ¹⁸⁴⁷ "set-like" as described above. Hence $L \subseteq OD$. Q.E.D.

1848 COROLLARY 4.25 $Con(ZF) \Rightarrow Con(ZF + V = OD).$

Q.E.D.

¹⁸⁴⁵ COROLLARY 4.24 $L \subseteq OD$

PROOF: V = L implies V = OD by the last corollary. So this follows from Theorem 4.14. Q.E.D. 1850

¹⁸⁵¹ On the other hand it is not provable in *ZF* that V = OD (or that *OD* is transitive; even $(AxExt)^{OD}$ ¹⁸⁵² may fail, see Ex.4.20 below). Indeed we cannot prove that *OD* is an inner model of *ZFC*. Then we need ¹⁸⁵³ to consider the closely related subclass of *hereditarily ordinal definable sets*.

DEFINITION 4.26 (The hereditarily ordinal definable sets - HOD)

$$z \in HOD \Leftrightarrow z \in OD \land TC(z) \subseteq OD.$$

We thus require not only that z be in OD but this fact propagates down through the \in -relation below z. By definition HOD is a transitive class of sets containing all ordinals.

1856 EXERCISE 4.18 Show $z \in HOD \leftrightarrow z \in OD \land \forall y \in z(y \in HOD)$. Show that $\mathcal{P}(\omega) \cap OD = \mathcal{P}(\omega) \cap HOD$.

1857 THEOREM 4.27 $(ZFC)^{HOD}$, that is for each axiom τ of ZFC, we have τ^{HOD} .

PROOF: By transitivity of *HOD* we have $\emptyset \in HOD$ and AxExtensionality holds in *HOD*. It is easy to 1858 check that $x, y \in HOD \rightarrow \{x, y\}, \bigcup x \in HOD$. Likewise as any ordinal is in HOD (e.g., by induction 1859 using the last exercise), so is $\omega \in HOD$. For AxPower: suppose $x \in HOD$. It suffices to show that 1860 $\mathcal{P}(x)^{HOD} = \mathcal{P}(x) \cap HOD \in OD$. (Again see the last exercise. The first equality is obvious as " $y \subseteq x$ " is 1861 Δ_0 .) But notice that $\mathcal{P}(x) \cap HOD = \mathcal{P}(x) \cap OD$. (If $y \subseteq x \land y \in OD$ then $y \in HOD$ by the exercise.) 1862 So it suffices to show $\mathcal{P}(x) \cap OD \in OD$. Let $\gamma_0 = \rho(x)$; then $\mathcal{P}(x) \cap OD \subseteq V_{\gamma_0}$. Let φ_{OD} be as above. 1863 As $x \in OD$ there are $\psi, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_n$ with $\{x\} = \{x \mid \psi(x, \beta)\}$. By the Reflection Theorem on φ_{OD} and ψ 1864 we can find $\gamma_1 > \gamma_0$, $\vec{\beta}$ with $z = \mathcal{P}(x) \cap OD \Leftrightarrow V_{\gamma_1} \models \exists x (\psi(x, \vec{\beta}) \land z = \{y \mid \varphi_{OD}(y) \land y \subseteq x\}).$ 1865

For AxSeparation: let *a* be a class term, and let $x \in HOD$. We require that $a^{HOD} \cap x \in HOD$. Suppose $a = \{z \mid \varphi(z, \vec{y})\}$ for some φ , some $\vec{y} \in HOD$. By the Reflection Theorem we can find a sufficiently large γ which is reflecting for φ and the defining formula for HOD, and with $a^{HOD} \cap x \in V_{\gamma}$. Then we have:

$$u = a^{HOD} \cap x \Leftrightarrow V_{\gamma} \vDash u = \{z \in x \mid \varphi(z, \vec{y})^{HOD}\}.$$

From the right hand side here, we see that u is definable over V_{γ} but using the parameters x and \vec{y} . However these are all in *OD* and so we may replace them by their (finitely many) definitions using just ordinal parameters, thereby rendering the right hand side a term purely with ordinal parameters. Hence u is in *OD* and thence in *HOD* (as $u \subseteq x \subseteq HOD$).

AxReplacement is similar: let F be a function given by a term, and let $x \in HOD$. We require $F^{HOD``}x \in HOD$. In V, by AxReplacement, let $F^{HOD``}x \subseteq V_{\gamma}$, but then also is a subset of $V_{\kappa} \cap HOD$. It thus suffices to show $V_{\gamma} \cap HOD \in HOD$, as then the AxSeparation will separate out from $HOD \cap V_{\gamma}$ exactly the set $F^{HOD``}x$. This is the next Exercise.

Finally for AxChoice, we show that the Wellordering Principle holds in *HOD*: by Theorem 4.22 we already have an *OD*-definable wellordering of $OD \supseteq HOD$, $<_{OD}$. If $x \in HOD$, then $\{\langle u, v \rangle \mid u, v \in x, u <_{OD} v\}$ is in *HOD* and wellorders x. Q.E.D.

1877 EXERCISE 4.19 Show that for any β , $V_{\beta} \cap HOD \in HOD$.

EXERCISE 4.20 Show that the following are equivalent: (i) V = OD, (ii) V = HOD, (iii) Trans(OD), (iv) $(AxExt)^{OD}$. [Hint: Use that for any $\alpha V_{\alpha} \in OD \land V_{\alpha} \cap OD \in OD$.]

EXERCISE 4.21 Show that $HOD \cap \mathcal{P}(\omega)$ is the largest subset of $\mathcal{P}(\omega)$ with a definable wellorder. [Hint: Use Lemma 4.23 and Ex. 4.18.]

EXERCISE 4.22 Suppose that *W* is a term defining an inner model of *ZF* and there is a definable global wellorder of *W* (that, as in *L*, there is a formula defining a wellorder $<_W$ of the whole of *W* in order type *On*). Show that $W \subseteq HOD$. (Consequently *HOD* is the largest inner model *W* with a definable bijection $F : On \leftrightarrow W$.)

EXERCISE 4.23 Define " Π_2 -*OD*" (and Π_2 -*HOD*) just as we did for *OD* and *HOD* but now restrict the formulae allowed in definitions to be Π_2 only. Show that Π_2 -*OD* = *OD* and Π_2 -*HOD* = *HOD*. Now do the same for Σ_2 -*OD* and Σ_2 -*HOD*.

EXERCISE 4.24 * Show that there is a *single* formula $\varphi_0(v_0)$ with just the free variable shown, so that *OD* is the class of all those x so that $x \in \text{Def}_0(V_\beta)$ for some β , that is for some β , $\{x\} = \{z \mid \varphi_0(z)^{V_\beta}\}$.

Again it is consistent that V = L = HOD, $V \neq L = HOD$ and $V \neq L \neq HOD$ as well as further combinations such as HOD^{HOD} may or may not equal HOD. *CH* may fail in HOD (see the next Exercise).

EXERCISE 4.25 (*)(*E*)) This shows that we may have $(\neg CH)^{HOD}$. Let $C_{\alpha} = \{n \in \omega \mid 2^{\aleph_{\alpha+n}} = \aleph_{\alpha+n+1}\}$. Suppose $|\{C_{\alpha} \mid \alpha \in On\}| \ge \aleph_2$ (this can be shown consistent with *ZFC*), then $(\neg CH)^{HOD}$.

We can define OD_x and HOD_x as before but now we allow sets $z \in x$ as parameters in our definitions as well as ordinals. HOD_x will be an inner model of *ZF* as before, but it will only be a model of Choice if there is an HOD_x -definable wellorder of x itself to start with.

1897

4.6 CRITERIA FOR INNER MODELS

It is possible to give a definition for when a class term W defines an inner model, IM(W), for the ZF axioms which is formalisable in ZF. We first give an equivalent axiomatisation of ZF.

1900 DEFINITION 4.28 We set ZF^* to be the theory that consists of the Axioms Axo-4, Ax7-8 and:

1901 **Ax5**^{*} (Δ_0 -Separation Scheme) For every Δ_0 -term $a: x \cap a \in V$

where by a Δ_0 -term a we mean a term $a = \{x \mid \varphi(x, \vec{y})\}$ where φ is a Δ_0 -formula.

1903 **Ax6**^{*} (Collection Scheme) For every formula $\varphi: \forall \vec{y} \exists v \varphi(v, \vec{y}) \longrightarrow \forall z \exists w (\forall \vec{y} \in z \exists v \in w \varphi(v, \vec{y}))$.

The weakening of the **Ax.5** is made up for by the strengthening of **Ax6** which is less about the range of functions than 'collecting' together the ranges of relations on sets *z*. Note we could have expressed **Ax6**^{*}, somewhat more awkwardly, as: "For any term *r* if $\forall y r^{*} \{y\} \neq \emptyset$ then $\forall z \exists w \forall y \in z(r^{*} \{y\} \cap w \neq \emptyset)$ ".

1907 THEOREM 4.29 $ZF \vdash ZF^*$ and $ZF^* \vdash ZF$, and thus the two theories are equivalent.

It is unknown whether weakening Ax5 alone to $Ax5^*$ but keeping Ax6 is a theory equivalent to ZFin this sense.

THEOREM 4.30 For any term W IM(W) is equivalent to the set of formulae:

$$ZF^W \cup \{Trans(W), On \subseteq W\}.$$

THEOREM 4.31 If W is any term, and (i) Trans(W), $On \subseteq W$, (ii) $\forall x \in W \text{ Def}(x) \subseteq W$, and (iii) W is supertransitive, that is $\forall x \subseteq W \exists z \supseteq x(z \in W)$, then ZF^W , and so IM(W).

The utility of the last theorem is that often it is a simple matter to verify (i)-(iii) for any given W. For example, HOD is easily seen to have these three properties. Whilst the statement " ZF^{W} " (or indeed "IM(W)") is metatheoretic in nature: it requires assertions of the infinitely many formulae contained in " ZF^{W} ", the three assertions (i)-(iii) are in our formal language. This shows that a term W being an inner model is truly a first order expression about W.

EXERCISE 4.26 Show that there is a finite set of axioms of ZF so that if $On \subseteq W$ and W is a transitive class model of just these axioms then it is a model of all the axioms of ZF. Why does this not contradict the non-finite axiomatisability of ZF, Theorem 3.10?

EXERCISE 4.27 Show that if M is a class term, and IM(M), and $(\neg CH)^M$ then ZF is inconsistent.

1921

4.6.1 FURTHER EXAMPLES OF INNER MODELS

1922 Relative constructibility

¹⁹²³ There are several ways to generalise Gödel's construction of *L*.

1924

¹⁹²⁵ (I) The L(A)-hierarchy.

1926

Here we start out, not with the empty set as L_0 but with the set A:

Definition 4.32

$$L_0(A) = A \cup \{A\};$$

$$L_{\alpha+1}(A) = \operatorname{Def}(\langle L_{\alpha}(A), \in \rangle);$$

$$\operatorname{Lim}(\lambda) \to L_{\lambda}(A) = \bigcup \{L_{\alpha}(A) \mid \alpha < \lambda\}.$$

$$L(A) = \bigcup \{L_{\alpha}(A) \mid \alpha < \operatorname{On}\}.$$

In this model the arguments for L can be straightforwardly used to show that all axioms of ZF are 1928 valid in L(A). However the Axiom of Choice need not hold, unless in L(A) there is a L(A)-definable 1929 wellorder of A. Of course if V = L then $A \in L$ and the construction of L inside the ZF-model L(A)1930 reveals that "V = L" holds, in which case $AC^{L(A)}$ trivially holds. Matters become more interesting when 1931 $V \neq L$, and an important model here is when $A = \mathbb{R}$. The model $L(\mathbb{R})$ contains all the reals (and so the 1932 structure of mathematical analysis). Consequently anything definable in the structure of analysis resides 1933 in the model. Moreover anything obtained by 'iterated definability over analysis' is also here: it would be 1934 definable using ordinals and the set of reals. Thus it is thought, the broadest methods of definability over 1935 analysis would produce sets in this model. Consequently it is in some sense a laboratory for generalised 1936 definability in analysis. However it is not thought in general that there must be wellorder of \mathbb{R} that is 1937 *definable* over \mathbb{R} , or indeed in $L(\mathbb{R})$. (This was one approach that Cantor took to look at CH: to try to 1938 find a definable wellorder of \mathbb{R} ; but it is consistent with the axioms of ZF that there is no such wellorder.) 1939 Consequently when, set theorists investigate $L(\mathbb{R})$ they do not assume that AC holds there, although it 1940

¹⁹⁴¹ is taken to hold hold in the wider universe *V*.

1942

1943 (II) The L[A]-hierarchy.

1944

110 Ine E[11]-incrateny.

The next hierarchy instead enlarges the language of set theory to incorporate a one place predicate symbol \dot{A} . Thus A(x) either will or will not be true of sets x. The Def operator is enlarged to an operator Def $_{\dot{A}}$ that now defines new sets over some structure in this new language

DEFINITION 4.33

$$L_0[A] = \emptyset;$$

$$L_{\alpha+1}[A] = \operatorname{Def}_{\dot{A}}(\langle L_{\alpha}[A], \in, A \rangle);$$

$$\operatorname{Lim}(\lambda) \to L_{\lambda}[A] = \bigcup \{L_{\alpha}[A] \mid \alpha < \lambda \}$$

$$L[A] = \bigcup \{L_{\alpha}[A] \mid \alpha < \operatorname{On}\}.$$

The predicate *A* is usually taken to be a set in *V*, but the definition is perfectly good, and can be formulated in *ZF* if *A* is a definable proper class of sets. In either case *A* may impose quite a 'wild' behaviour on the model L[A]. hat is not the case for the following very important inner model: unlike *L*, this model can accommodate the large cardinal called a '*measurable cardinal*'.

¹⁹⁵² DEFINITION 4.34 $(L[\mu]) L[\mu]$ is the above hierarchy where μ is a κ -complete ultrafilter on $\mathcal{P}(\kappa)$ in the ¹⁹⁵³ sense of the discussion at the end of Section 2.1.2.

The inner model $L[\mu]$ is much studied (μ is a κ -complete ultrafilter on $\mathcal{P}(\kappa)$)^{$L[\mu]$} and moreover, is the least inner model with this property. It has an absolute construction property similar to L within in any other inner model with such a ultrafilter or 'measure' on κ . It can be shown that (GCH)^{$L[\mu]$}, although the Condensation Lemma strictly speaking, fails in $L[\mu]$.

EXERCISE 4.28 Show for any A that $(ZF)^{L(A)}$ and that $(ZFC)^{L[A]}$. [Hint: Just modify the same arguments for L.]

EXERCISE 4.29 (i) Show that in L[A], for $A \subseteq \kappa$, that for any $\gamma \ge \kappa$, $2^{\gamma} = \gamma^+$. (Thus, in L[A] the GCH holds 'above κ .') [Hint: Again modify the argument for L; this can only work above κ since A could be completely general, and we have no knowledge how $L_{\kappa}[A]$ may look.]

(ii) However improve the last exercise, by showing that in L[A], for $A \subseteq \kappa = \delta^+$, that for any $\gamma \ge \delta$, $2^{\gamma} = \gamma^+$.

1963 Higher Order Constructibility

We do not give the details, but for the reader familiar with notions of higher order logics, in particular *n*'th-order logics for $n < \omega$, we may construct L^n using *n*'th order logical definability Defⁿ (where our previous Def is now Def¹. Remarkably these notions do not form a hierarchy for $n \ge 3$, but instead all collapse:

1968 THEOREM 4.35 (MYHILL-SCOTT) For $n \ge 2 L^n = HOD$.

4.7 THE SUSLIN PROBLEM

- ¹⁹⁷⁰ It is well known (in fact it is a theorem of Cantor) that if $\langle X, \langle \rangle$ is a totally ordered continuum that satisfies
- 1971 (i) $\langle X, \langle \rangle$ has no first or last end points;

(ii) $\langle X, \langle \rangle$ has a countable dense subset Y (that is $\forall x, z \in X \exists y \in Y(x < y < z)$);

1973 then $\langle X, \langle \rangle$ is isomorphic to $\langle \mathbb{R}, \langle \rangle$.

(By *continuum* one requires that for any bounded subset of an interval in (X, <) has a supremum in 1975 X (and likewise an infimum in X.)

¹⁹⁷⁶ Suslin asked (1925) whether (ii) could be replaced with the seemingly weaker

(iii) $\langle X, \langle \rangle$ has the *countable chain condition* (*c.c.c.*) (that, if $I_{\alpha} = (x_{\alpha}, y_{\alpha})$ for $\alpha \langle \omega_1$ is a family of open intervals in $\langle X, \langle \rangle$ then $\exists \alpha \exists \beta (I_{\alpha} \cap I_{\beta} \neq \emptyset)$).

¹⁹⁷⁹ Notice that (ii) implies (iii) : every open interval I_{α} must contain an element of *Y*; however *Y* only ¹⁹⁸⁰ has countably many elements.

The question is thus: do (i) and (iii) also characterise the real line $\langle \mathbb{R}, \langle \rangle$? Suslin hypothesised that they did. This became known as Suslin's hypothesis (SH). The problem can be reduced to the following question concerning *trees* on ordinals.

DEFINITION 4.36 A tree $\langle T, \rangle$ is a partial ordering such that $\forall x \in T(\{y \mid y < x\})$ is wellordered. (*i*) The height of x in T, ht(x), is ot($\{y \mid y < x\}, <$) (also called the rank of x in T).

1985 1986

(ii) The height of T is
$$\sup{ht(x) | x \in T}$$
;

1987 (iii) $T_{\alpha} =_{\mathrm{df}} \{ x \in T \mid \mathrm{ht}(x) = \alpha \}.$

Thus T_0 consists of the bottommost elements of the tree, and so are called *root(s)* (we shall assume there is only one root). A *chain* in any partial order $\langle T, <_T \rangle$ is any subset of T linearly ordered by $<_T$ and an *antichain* is any subset of T no two elements of which are $<_T$ –comparable. For a tree T a subset $b \subseteq T$ is a *branch* if it is a maximal linearly ordered (and so wellordered) set under $<_T$. A branch need not necessarily have a top-most element of course.

1993 DEFINITION 4.37 Let κ be a regular cardinal. A κ - Suslin tree is a tree $\langle T, \rangle$ such that

1994 (i) $|T| = \kappa$;

1995 (ii) Every chain and antichain in T has cardinality $< \kappa$.

¹⁹⁹⁶ We shall be concerned with ω_1 - Suslin trees (and we shall drop the prefix " ω_1 "). König's Lemma states ¹⁹⁹⁷ that every countable tree with nodes that "split" finitely, has an infinite branch. This paraphrased says, *a* ¹⁹⁹⁸ *fortiori*, that there are no ω -Suslin trees.

¹⁹⁹⁹ It turns out (see Devlin [1]) that the Suslin Hypothesis is equivalent to:

2000 (SH): "There are no ω_1 -Suslin trees"

2001 (Although this requires proof which we omit.) So do such trees exist?

²⁰⁰² THEOREM 4.38 (Jensen) Assume V = L; then there is an ω_1 -Suslin tree.

2003 Hence:

2004 COROLLARY 4.39 $Con(ZF) \Rightarrow Con(ZFC + CH + \neg SH)$

1969

The Suslin Problem

It turns out that there is a construction principle for Suslin trees that is in itself of immense interest: it can be considered a strong form of the Continuum Hypothesis. It has been widely used in set theory and topology and has been much studied.

DEFINITION 4.40 (The Diamond Principle). \diamond is the assertion that there exists a sequence $\langle S_{\alpha} | \alpha < \omega_1 \rangle$ so that (i) $\forall \alpha (S_{\alpha} \subseteq \alpha)$ (ii) $\forall X \subseteq \omega_1 \{ \alpha | X \cap \alpha = S_{\alpha} \}$ is stationary.

 \diamond thus asserts that there is a single sequence of S_{α} 's that approximate any subset of ω_1 "very often". In particular note that $\diamond \longrightarrow CH$: if $x \subseteq \omega$ is any real then $x = S_{\alpha}$ for "stationarily" many $\alpha < \omega_1$. Thus the \diamond sequence incorporates an enumeration of the real continuum with each real occurring ω_1 many times in that enumeration. However it does much more beside.

```
<sup>2015</sup> THEOREM 4.41 (Jensen) In L, \diamond holds. That is ZF \vdash (\diamond)^L.
```

PROOF: Assume V = L. We have to define a \diamond -sequence $\langle S_{\alpha} | \alpha < \omega_1 \rangle$. We define by recursion $\langle S_{\alpha}, C_{\alpha} \rangle$ for $\alpha < \omega_1$: $\langle S_{\alpha}, C_{\alpha} \rangle$ is the $<_L$ -least pair of sets $\langle S, C \rangle$ so that

2018 (a) $S_{\alpha} \subseteq \alpha$

(b) C is c.u.b. in α ;

2020 (c) $\forall \beta \in C(S \cap \beta \neq S_{\beta})$

²⁰²¹ if there is such a pair, and $\langle S_{\alpha}, C_{\alpha} \rangle = \langle \emptyset, \emptyset \rangle$ otherwise.

Thus, somewhat paradoxically, $\langle S_{\alpha}, C_{\alpha} \rangle$ is chosen to be the $<_L$ - least "counterexample" to a \diamond sequence of length α .

Let $S = \langle S_{\alpha} | \alpha < \omega_1 \rangle$. As we are assuming V = L, we have just constructed $S \in H_{\omega_2} = L_{\omega_2}$. Looking a little more closely, since $\mathcal{P}(\omega_1) \subseteq L_{\omega_2}$, we have actually defined S by a recursion which only involved inspecting objects in L_{ω_2} which had certain definite properties. L_{ω_2} is a model of ZF⁻ so these properties are absolute between L_{ω_2} and V which is L by assumption. In short the recursion as defined in L_{ω_2} defines the same S as in $V: \forall \alpha < \omega_2(\langle S_{\alpha}, C_{\alpha} \rangle)_{L_{\omega_2}} = \langle S_{\alpha}, C_{\alpha} \rangle$ and indeed $(S)_{L_{\omega_2}} = S$.

If S is not a \diamond -sequence then:

```
2030 (1) There is an <_L-least pair (S, C) with
```

(a) $S \subseteq \omega_1$; (b) $C \subseteq \omega_1$ and C cub in ω_1 ; (c) $\forall \beta \in C(S \cap \beta \neq S_\beta)$.

Given that we have $S \in L_{\omega_2}$ the quantifiers in (1) are referring only to sets in L_{ω_2} . (1) thus holds relativised to L_{ω_2} . Expressing that in semantical terms we have:

2034 (2) $\langle L_{\omega_2}, \in \rangle \models (S, C)$ is the $<_L$ -least pair with

(a) $S \subseteq \omega_1$; (b) $C \subseteq \omega_1$ and C cub in ω_1 ; (c) $\forall \beta \in C(S \cap \beta \neq S_\beta)$.

By appealing to the Löwenheim-Skolem Theorem we can find $X \subseteq L_{\omega_2}$ with:

2037 (3) $\langle X, \in \rangle < \langle L_{\omega_2}, \in \rangle$ with $S, \langle S, C \rangle, \omega_1 \in X, \omega \subseteq X, and |X| = \omega$.

By Exercise 4.13 (ii) we have that $X \cap L_{\omega_1}$ is transitive and so in fact is some L_{γ} for some $\gamma < \omega_1$. If we now apply the Mostoski-Shepherdson Collapsing Lemma we have there is a π and a τ with:

2040 (4)
$$\pi: (L_{\tau}, \in) \cong (X, \in)$$
 with $\pi \upharpoonright L_{\gamma} = \mathrm{id}$.

(Recall that as $L_{\gamma} \subseteq X$ and is transitive π will be the identity on L_{γ} .)

2042 (5)
$$\pi(\gamma) = \omega_1$$
, and if \overline{S} , \overline{C} are such that $\pi(\overline{S}) = S$, $\pi(\overline{C}) = C$, then $\overline{S} = S \cap \gamma$, $\overline{C} = C \cap \gamma$.

2043 PROOF: $\pi^{-1}(\omega_1) = \{\pi^{-1}(\xi) \mid \xi \in \omega_1 \cap X\}$

 $= \{ \xi \mid \xi \in \omega_1 \cap X \}$ 2044 $= \omega_1 \cap X = \gamma.$ 2045 Similarly $\overline{S} = \pi^{-1}(S) = \{\pi^{-1}(\xi) \mid \xi \in S \cap X\}$ 2046 $= \{\pi^{-1}(\xi) \mid \xi \in S \cap \gamma\}$ 2047 $= \{\xi \mid \xi \in S \cap \gamma\} \text{ (using (4))}$ 2048 $= S \cap \gamma$. 2049 That $C = C \cap \gamma$ is entirely the same. Q.E.D.(5) 2050 (6) If $\overline{S} = \pi^{-1}(S)$ then $\overline{S} = S \upharpoonright \gamma$. 2051 **PROOF:** Note that $\pi^{-1}(\langle S_{\xi} | \xi < \omega_1 \rangle) = \pi^{-1}(\{\langle \xi, S_{\xi} \rangle | \xi < \omega_1\})$ 2052 $= \{\pi^{-1}(\langle \xi, S_{\xi} \rangle) \mid \xi < \pi^{-1}(\omega_1)\}$ 2053 $= \{ \langle \pi^{-1}(\xi), \pi^{-1}(S_{\xi}) \rangle \mid \xi < \gamma \}$ 2054 $= \{ \langle \xi, S_{\xi} \rangle \mid \xi < \gamma \} \text{ since both } \xi, S_{\xi} \in L_{\gamma}.$ 2055 2056 Similar equalities hold for $\pi^{-1}(\langle C_{\xi} | \xi < \omega_1 \rangle)$. Hence $\pi^{-1}(\langle S_{\xi}, C_{\xi} \rangle | \xi < \omega_1 \rangle) = S \upharpoonright \gamma$. Q.E.D.(6) 2057 Appealing to (2) and (4) we have: 2058 (7) $\langle L_{\tau}, \in \rangle \models$ " $\langle \overline{S}, \overline{C} \rangle$ is the $\langle L$ -least pair with 2059 (a) $\overline{S} \subseteq \gamma$; (b) $\overline{C} \subseteq \gamma$ and \overline{C} cub in γ ; (c) $\forall \beta \in \overline{C}(\overline{S} \cap \beta \neq S_{\beta})$." 2060 As $<_{L_{\tau}} = (<_L)_{L_{\tau}}$ and $<_L$ is an end-extension of $<_{L_{\tau}}$ and since (a)-(c) are absolute for transitive ZF⁻ 2061 models, we have that (a)-(c) are really true in V of S, C, *i.e.* : 2062 (8) $\langle S, C \rangle$ is the $\langle L$ -least pair with 2063 (a) $\overline{S} \subseteq \gamma$; (b) $\overline{C} \subseteq \gamma$ and \overline{C} cub in γ ; (c) $\forall \beta \in \overline{C}(\overline{S} \cap \beta \neq S_{\beta})$. 2064 That is, \overline{S} , \overline{C} really are the candidates to be chosen at the next, γ 'th, stage of the recursion: 2065 (9) $\langle S, \overline{C} \rangle = \langle S_{\gamma}, C_{\gamma} \rangle.$ 2066 Now note that $\gamma \in C$ as $\overline{C} = C \cap \gamma$ is unbounded in the closed set C. Also, using (5), $S \cap \gamma = \overline{S} = S_{\gamma}$. 2067 This contradicts (1)! O.E.D. 2068 EXERCISE 4.30 (*) Formulate a principle \diamond_{κ} which asserts similar properties for a sequence $\langle S_{\alpha} | \alpha < \kappa \rangle$ where κ 2069 is any regular cardinal, and prove that it holds in L 2070

EXERCISE 4.31 (**) Show that \diamond implies the existence of a family $\langle A_{\xi} | \xi < \omega_2 \rangle$ of stationary subsets of ω_1 , such that the intersection of any two of them is countable.

²⁰⁷³ THEOREM 4.42 (Jensen) \diamondsuit implies the existence of a Suslin tree.

PROOF: We shall construct by recursion a tree *T* of cardinality ω_1 , using countable ordinals. In fact we shall have that $T = \omega_1$ itself, the construction thus delivers $<_T$. *T* will be the union of its levels T_{α} all of which will be countable, and $<_T = \bigcup_{\alpha < \omega_1} <_{T \leq \alpha}$ where (a) $T_{<\alpha} = \bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} T_{\beta}$ and (b) $<_{T_{<\alpha}}$ is the tree ordering constructed so far on $T_{<\alpha}$. We shall ensure that every $<_T$ -branch is countable, and likewise every maximal antichain. Then $\langle T, <_T \rangle$ will be Suslin. The recursion will ensure a *normality* condition: for every $\xi \in T$, and if $\xi \in T_{\alpha}$, then for every $\alpha < \beta < \omega_1$ there is $\zeta \in T_{\beta}$ with $\xi <_T \zeta$; every node then in the tree has tree-successors of arbitrary height below ω_1 .

We let $T \upharpoonright 1 = T_0 = \{0\}$ and $T_{<1} = \emptyset$. Assume $\text{Lim}(\alpha)$ and $T_{\beta}, <_{T_{<\beta}}$ defined for all $\beta < \alpha$. Then $T \upharpoonright \alpha = \bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} T_{\beta}$ and $<_{T_{<\alpha}} = \bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} <_{T_{<\beta}}$. Normality as described above, is then trivially conserved.
The Suslin Problem

Assume now $\alpha = \beta + 1$ and that Succ (β) . We assume that $T \upharpoonright \beta$, and $<_{T_{<\beta}}$ have been defined. We thus have defined T_{γ} where $\gamma + 1 = \beta$. For each $\xi \in T_{\gamma}$ we allot in turn the next ω sequence of ordinals available $\{\xi_i \mid i < \omega\}$. (We thus go through T_{γ} say by induction on the ordinals $\xi \in T_{\gamma}$ and we define $<_{T_{<\alpha}}$ by adding to the ordering $<_{T_{<\beta}}$ (which equals in the obvious sense $<_{T_{\leq\gamma}}$) the pairs $\langle\xi,\xi_i\rangle$ (and also the pairs $\langle\zeta,\xi_i\rangle$ for those $\zeta <_{T_{\leq\gamma}} \xi$ to complete the ordering.) Thus at successor stages of the tree it is infinitely branching. Again normality is obvious. This defines $T \upharpoonright \alpha$ and $<_{T_{\leq\beta}} = <_{T_{<\alpha}}$.

Finally if $\alpha = \beta + 1$ but $\text{Lim}(\beta)$ we need to define $T \upharpoonright \alpha$ and make a careful choice of which maximal branches through $T_{<\beta}$ (thus those of order type β) that we may extend with impunity to have nodes at level β , *i.e.* in T_{β} , thus fixing $<_{T<\alpha}$. This is where we use \diamond .

2092 *Case 1* $S_{\beta}(\subseteq \beta)$ *is a maximal antichain in the tree so far defined:* $(T_{<\beta}, <_{T_{<\beta}})$.

In this case for any $\xi \in T_{<\beta}$ there must be some $\sigma \in S_{\beta}$ with either $\sigma <_{T_{<\beta}} \xi$ or $\xi \leq_{T_{<\beta}} \sigma$. Either way 2093 by the normality of the tree $\langle T_{<\beta}, <_{T_{<\beta}} \rangle$ so far, we pick a branch b_{ξ} through $T_{<\beta}$ with both $\sigma, \xi \in b_{\xi}$. Let 2094 $B = \{b_{\xi} \mid \xi \in T_{<\beta}\}$. This is a countable set of branches. We enumerate B as $\{b_n \mid n < \omega\}$ and choose the 2095 next ω many ordinals ξ_n for $n < \omega$, with $\xi_n \notin T_{<\beta}$. We extend the branch b_n to have ξ_n as a final node, 2096 and enlarge $<_{T \leq \beta}$ appropriately to $<_{T \leq \alpha}$. (Thus if ζ is on the branch b_n extended with the new point ξ_n , we 2097 add the ordered pair (ζ, ξ_n) to $<_{T_{<\beta}}$; we thus obtain $<_{T_{<\alpha}}$.) Then we have $T_{\beta} = T_{<\beta} \cup \{\xi_n \mid n < \omega\}$ and 2098 so we have $T \upharpoonright \alpha$. By construction again we preserve normality: every $\zeta \in T_{<\alpha}$ has a successor in T_{β} . 2099 Case 2 Otherwise. 2100

Then we let T_{β} be any set consisting of the next ω many ordinals not used so far, and extend the ordering of $\langle T_{<\beta} \rangle$ to T_{β} in any fashion as long as normality is preserved. (In other words we can just enumerate $T_{<\beta}$ as $\langle \zeta_n | n < \omega \rangle$ and go through adding on some new ordinals ξ_n to some branch through ζ_n that has order type β -if need be- as long as we ensure ζ_n has *some* successor at height β .

This ends the construction. We claim that if we set $T = \bigcup_{\alpha < \omega_1} T_{\beta}$ and $<_T = \bigcup_{\alpha < \omega_1} <_{T_{\beta}}$ then $\langle T, <_T \rangle$ is a Suslin tree. First we see that it has no uncountable antichain. Suppose there were such, and let $A \subseteq \omega_1$ be a maximal uncountable antichain (which exists by Zorn's Lemma).

2108 Claim C = { $\alpha \mid A \cap T_{<\alpha}$ is a maximal antichain in $T_{<\alpha}$ } is cub in ω_1 .

PROOF: Let $\beta_0 < \omega_1$ be arbitrary. As $T_{<\beta_0}$ is countable, there exists $\beta_1 < \omega_1$ with every element of $T_{<\beta_0}$ compatible with some element of $A \cap T_{<\beta_1}$. Repeating this, we find $\beta_2 > \beta_1$ so that every element of $T_{<\beta_1}$ compatible with some element of $A \cap T_{<\beta_2}$; and similarly $\beta_{n+1} > \beta_n$ so that every element of $T_{<\beta_n}$ compatible with some element of $A \cap T_{<\beta_{n+1}}$. If $\gamma = \sup_n \beta_n$ then $A \cap T_{<\gamma}$ is a maximal antichain in $T_{<\gamma}$. *C* is thus unbounded in ω_1 . That *C* is closed is immediate. Q.E.D. *Claim*

By our requisite property that $\langle S_{\alpha} \mid \alpha < \omega_1 \rangle$ is a \diamond -sequence, now that *C* is cub and $A \subseteq \omega_1$, there must be $\beta \in C$ with $S_{\beta} = A \cap \beta$. Thus S_{β} is a maximal antichain in $<_{T_{<\beta}}$. However at precisely this point in the construction we would have chosen T_{β} so that every element of $T_{<\beta}$, and so every element of $A \cap T_{<\beta}$, has a tree successor at height β in T_{β} . Note that all elements of the tree at greater heights $\delta > \beta$ are extensions of the tree above these elements on T_{β} . Thus $A \cap \beta$ is a maximal antichain in $<_T$! But $A \cap \beta$ must be A and be countable! Contradiction! Q.E.D.

2120 EXERCISE 4.32 (**) Show that \diamond implies the existence of two non-isomorphic Suslin trees.

One could further ask whether SH depends on CH. It is completely independent of CH as the following states.

• Con(ZF) implies the consistency of any of the following theories:

$$2124$$
 ZF+CH+SH; ZF+CH+ \neg SH; ZF+ \neg CH+ \neg SH: ZF+ \neg CH+SH

The second of these is Cor. 4.39 above. The other consistencies can be shown by using variations on Cohen's forcing methods, for which see [4]. Some of the arguments are very subtle.



Ronald Jensen

2127

Appendix A

Logical Matters

2130

2128

2129

A.1 The formal languages - syntax

We outline formal first order languages of predicate logic with axioms for equality. We do this for our language $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}_{\in}$ which we shall use for set theory, but it is completely general:

2133

(i) set variables; $v_0, v_1, \ldots, v_n, \ldots$ (for $n \in \mathbb{N}$)

(ii) two binary predicates: \doteq , \doteq ; an optional *n*-ary relation symbol $\dot{R}v_1 \cdots v_n$ (other languages would contain further function symbols \dot{F}_i and relations symbols \dot{R}_j of different -arities).

(iii) logical connectives: \lor , \neg

2138 (iv) brackets: (,)

(v) an existential quantifier: \exists .

2140

A formula is finite string of our symbol set; the formulae of \mathcal{L} ('Fml') are defined inductively in a way similar for any first order language.

1) x = y and $x \in y$ are the atomic formulae where x, y stand for any of the variables v_i , v_j . (If we opt for variants where we have the relation or function symbols, then $Rv_1 \cdots v_n$ and $Fv_1 \cdots v_n = v_{n+1}$ are also atomic.) 2) Any atomic formula is a formula;

3) If φ and ψ are formulae then so is $\neg \varphi$ and $(\varphi \lor \psi)$, $\exists x \varphi$ where x is any variable;

4) φ is only a formula if it is so by repeated applications of 1)-3).

2148

Inherent in the induction is the idea that a formula has *subformulae* and that a formula is built up from atomic formulae according to some *finite* tree structure. Further, given the formula we may identify the unique tree structure. Indeed we think of this as an *algorithm* that given a symbol string tests whether it is a formula by winding the recursion backwards to try to discover the underlying tree structure. Using this fact we can then perform recursions over the class of formulae using the clauses 1)-3) as part of our recursive definition. Clause 4) then ensures that our recursion will cover all formulae.

²¹⁵⁵ DEFINITION A.1 For φ a formula we define

(*A*) *the* set of variables of φ , Vbl(φ) *by*:

2157 $Vbl(v_i = v_j) = Vbl(v_i \in v_j) = \{v_i, v_j\}; Vbl(Rv_1 \cdots v_n) = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\};$ 2158 $Vbl(\neg \varphi)) = Vbl(\varphi); Vbl((\varphi \lor \psi)) = Vbl(\varphi) \cup Vbl(\psi); Vbl(\exists x \varphi) = Vbl(\varphi) \cup \{x\}.$ 2159 (B) the set of free variables of φ , $FVbl(\varphi)$ would be obtained exactly as above but changing the clause 2160 for $\exists x \varphi$ to: $FVbl(\exists x \varphi) = FVbl(\varphi) - \{x\}$ 2161 (C) φ is a sentence if $FVbl(\varphi) = \emptyset$.

By the above remarks in (B) we have defined the free variable set for all formulae. Note the crucial very final clause in (B) concerning the \exists quantifier. The set of official *logical connectives* is minimal, it is just \neg and \lor . But it is well known that the other connectives, \land , \rightarrow , \leftrightarrow can be defined in terms of them, as can \forall , from \exists and \neg . We shall use formulae freely involving these connectives, without comment. Here is another example.

²¹⁶⁷ DEFINITION A.2 For φ a formula, we define the set of subformulae of φ , Subfml(φ), by:

2168 Subfml $(v_i = v_j)$ = Subfml $(v_i \in v_j)$ = Subfml $(Rv_1 \cdots v_n) = \emptyset;$

²¹⁶⁹ Subfml($\neg \varphi$)) = Subfml($\exists x \varphi$) = Subfml(φ) $\cup \{\varphi\}$;

Subfml($(\varphi \lor \psi)$) = Subfml $(\varphi) \cup$ Subfml $(\psi) \cup \{\varphi, \psi\}$.

2171 **Deductive systems**

A deductive system of *predicate calculus* is (I) a set of axioms from which we can make pure logical deductions together with (II) those rules of deduction. There are many examples. The following is the simplest to explain (but rather difficult to use naturally) but this allows us to prove things about the system as simply as possible.

(I) Axioms of predicate calculus (for a language with relational symbols, and equality):

For any variables *x*, *y* and any φ , ψ , χ in Fml:

2178 $\varphi \to (\psi \to \varphi)$

2179
$$(\varphi \to (\psi \to \chi)) \to ((\varphi \to \psi) \to (\varphi \to \chi))$$

2180 $(\neg \psi \rightarrow \neg \varphi) \rightarrow ((\neg \psi \rightarrow \varphi) \rightarrow \psi)$

2181 $\forall x \phi(x) \rightarrow \phi(y/x)$ where *y* is *free for x* (this has a slightly technical meaning).

2182 $\forall x(\varphi \to \psi) \to (\varphi \to \forall x\psi) \text{ (where } x \notin Fr(\varphi))$

2183 $\forall x(x = x)$

```
2184 x = y \rightarrow (\varphi(x, x) \rightarrow \varphi(x, y))
```

2185 (II) Rules of Deduction

(1) *Modus Ponens*. From $(\varphi \rightarrow \psi)$ and φ deduce: ψ .

(2) Universal Generalisation: From φ deduce $\forall x \varphi$.

2188

In general a *theory* is a set of sentences, *T*, in a language (such as \mathcal{L}_{\in}). A *proof* of a sentence σ is then a *finite* sequence of formulae: $\varphi_0, \varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_n = \sigma$ such that for any formula φ_i on the list either: (i) φ_i is an instance of a pure axiom of predicate calculus; or (ii) φ_i is in *T*; or (iii) φ_i follows from one or more earlier members of the list by an application of a deduction rule.

In which case we shall say that the list is a proof from the set of *axioms* T, and write $T \vdash \sigma$. If $T = \emptyset$ then we shall call this a proof in *first order logic* alone. We shall want to be able to say that it is a mechanical, or algorithmic, process to *check a proof*. Given a finite list which purports to be a proof, it is indeed a mechanical process to check (i) or (iii) for any φ_i on the list. In order to ensure the whole

Semantics

²¹⁹⁷ process is algorithmic it is usual (and overwhelmingly the case) that the set of axioms *T* is either finite ²¹⁹⁸ itself, or for any formula ψ there is an algorithm or recursive process which can decide whether ψ is in ²¹⁹⁹ *T* or not. In which case we say that *T* is a *recursive set of axioms*.

A.2 SEMANTICS

We have defined so far only *syntactical concepts*. We have not associated any *meaning*, or *interpretation* to our language. We want to know what it means for a sentence to be *true (or false) in an interpretation*. If I wish to express the commutative law in group theory say, then I may write something down such as $\forall x \forall y (\circ(x, y) = \circ(y, x))$ (with a binary function symbol $\circ(v_i, v_j)$). For this to be *true in the group G* say, we need that for any interpretation of the variables x, y as group elements g, h in G that g.h = h.g holds for the group multiplication.

We can give a recursive definition of what it means for a sentence to be 'true in a structure', but as can be seen, the recursion involves at the same time defining *satisfaction* of a formula φ by an assignment of elements to the free variables of φ , again by recursion on the structure of formulae. We'll keep with the example of a group $\langle G, e, \cdot, ^{-1} \rangle$ for a language containing a binary function symbl F_0 , a unary function symbol I and a constant symbol E which are interpreted as $\cdot, ^{-1}$, and e respectively. Then ' $I(v_j) = v_k$ ' and ' $F_0(v_i, v_j) = v_k$ ' now count as atomic formulae.

We let $Q_G = {}^{\langle \omega \rangle \text{Vbl}}G$ be the set of maps from finite sequences of variables of the language to *G* to *G*. For φ a formula let $\text{Vbl}(\varphi)$, be the set of all variables occurring in φ . For $h \in Q_G$, $v_i \in \text{dom}(h)$ and $g \in G$ we let h(g/i) be the function that is defined everywhere like *h* except that $h(g/i)(v_i) = g$.

DEFINITION A.3 (i) We define by recursion the term $Sat(\varphi, G)$; 2217 $Sat(v_i = v_i, G) = \{h \in Q_G | h(i) = h(j)\}$; 2218 $Sat(I(v_i) = v_k, G) = \{h \in Q_G | h(j)^{-1} = h(k)\}$ 2219 $Sat(F_{\circ}(v_{i}, v_{j}) = v_{k}, G) = \{h \in Q_{G} | h(i) \cdot h(j) = h(k)\};$ 2220 $\operatorname{Sat}(\chi \lor \psi, G) = (\operatorname{Sat}(\chi, G) \cup \operatorname{Sat}(\psi, G)) \cap \{h \in Q_G \mid \operatorname{dom}(h) \supseteq \{\operatorname{Vbl}(\chi) \cup \operatorname{Vbl}(\psi)\}\};$ 2221 $\operatorname{Sat}(\neg \psi, G) = Q_G \setminus \operatorname{Sat}(\psi, G) \};$ 2222 $\operatorname{Sat}(\exists v_i \psi, G) = \{h \in Q_G | \operatorname{dom}(h) \supseteq \operatorname{Vbl}(\psi) \cup \{v_i\} \& \exists g \in G(h(g/i) \in \operatorname{Sat}(\psi, G))\};$ 2223 $Sat(u, G) = \emptyset$ if u is not a formula. 2224 (ii) We write $(G, e, \cdot, {}^{-1}) \models \varphi[h]$ iff $h \in \text{Sat}(\varphi, G)$. 2225 Note: By design then we have $(G, e, \cdot, {}^{-1}) \models \neg \psi[h]$ iff it is not the case that $(G, e, \cdot, {}^{-1}) \models \psi[h]$ etc. (We

Note: By design then we have $\langle G, e, \cdot, \bar{}^{-1} \rangle \models \neg \psi[h]$ iff it is not the case that $\langle G, e, \cdot, \bar{}^{-1} \rangle \models \psi[h]$ etc. (We write the latter as $\langle G, e, \cdot, \bar{}^{-1} \rangle \neq \psi[h]$.)

- 2228 If φ is a sentence then we write
- 2229 2230

 $\langle G, e, \cdot, {}^{-1} \rangle \vDash \psi$ iff for some $h \in Q_G$ with dom $(h) \supseteq \operatorname{Vbl}(\varphi) \langle G, e, \cdot, {}^{-1} \rangle \vDash \psi[h]$

(equivalently for all $h \in Q_G$ with dom $(h) \supseteq \operatorname{Vbl}(\varphi) \langle G, e, \cdot, ^{-1} \rangle \vDash \psi[h]$).

If *T* is a set of sentences in a language, and \mathfrak{A} is a structure appropriate for that language, we write $\mathfrak{A} \models T$ iff for all ψ in $T \mathfrak{A} \models \psi$.

DEFINITION A.4 (Logical Validity) Let $T \cup \{\sigma\}$ be a theory in a language; then $T \models \sigma$ if for every structure

2200

 \mathfrak{A} appropriate for the language,

$$\mathfrak{A} \vDash T \Rightarrow \mathfrak{A} \vDash \sigma.$$

THEOREM A.5 (Gödel Completeness Theorem) Predicate Calculus is sound, that is,

$$T \vdash \sigma \Rightarrow T \models \sigma$$
.

2233 and is moreover complete, that is $T \vDash \sigma \Rightarrow T \vdash \sigma$.

The substantial part here is the Completeness direction: it is an *adequacy* result in that it shows that Predicate Calculus is sufficient to deduce from a theory T all those sentences that are true *in all structures* that are models of a particular theory. That it deduces *only those* sentences true in all structures satisfying the theory, is the soundness direction.

This theorem should not be confused with Gödel's Incompleteness Theorems. These concerned whether 2238 sets of axioms T were *consistent*, that is whether from the axioms of T we cannot prove a contradiction 2239 such as '0 = 1'. Here if we take T to be PA - *Peano Arithmetic* the accepted set of axioms for the natural 2240 number structure $\mathbb{N} = (\mathbb{N}, 0, \text{Succ})$, then Gödel showed that there was a suitable mapping $\varphi \rightarrow [\varphi]$ tak-2241 ing formulae in the language appropriate for \mathbb{N} , into *code numbers* of these formulae (called *gödel codes*). 2242 If formulae could be coded as elements of \mathbb{N} , so can a finite list of formulae - in other words potential 2243 proofs. Using the fact that the axioms of PA are capable of being recursively listed, he showed that there 2244 was a formula defining a function on pairs of numbers, F(n, k), to 1/0 with: 2245

2246

PA $\vdash \forall n \forall k F(n,k) \in \{0,1\} \land$

2248 $F(n,k) = 1 \Leftrightarrow n \text{ is a code number of a proof from PA of the formula } \varphi \text{ with } [\varphi] = k.$

He then showed that if PA is consistent, then in fact $PA \neq \forall nF(n, [0 = 1]) = 0$. The right hand side here is a statement about *F* and numbers, but has the interpretation that "PA is a consistent system (in other words that [0 = 1] is not deducible'). This is commonly abbreviated 'Con(PA)'; so he showed that even if PA is consistent, PA \neq Con(PA) (the *Second Incompleteness Theorem*). In fact the theorem has wider applicability as he noted after considering Turing's work on computability: for *any* consistent, computably given set of axioms *T* say, if from *T* we can deduce the Peano axioms, then $T \neq Con(T)$. The axioms of set theory ZF, if consistent, are of course such a *T*.

EXERCISE A.1 Let x be any set, and $f_i : {}^{n_i}V \longrightarrow V$ for $i < \omega$ be any collection of finitary functions (meaning that $n_i < \omega$); show that there is a $y \supseteq x$ which is closed under each of the f_i (thus $f_i : {}^{n_i}y \subseteq y$ for each *i*) and $|y| \le \max\{\omega, |x|\}$. [Hint: no need for a formal argument here: build up a y in ω many stages $y_k \subseteq y_{k+1}$ at each step applying all the f_i .]

DEFINITION A.6 Let $\mathfrak{A} = \langle A, =, \overrightarrow{R_i}, \overrightarrow{F_j} \rangle$ be any structure for any (first order) language $\mathcal{L}_{\mathfrak{A}}$. We write $\mathfrak{B} < \mathfrak{A}$ (" \mathfrak{B} is an elementary substructure of \mathfrak{A} "), where $\mathfrak{B} = \langle B, =, \overrightarrow{R_i} | B, \overrightarrow{F_j} | B \rangle$, to mean that every formula $\varphi(v_0, \ldots, v_{n-1})$ of the language of $\mathcal{L}_{\mathfrak{A}}$, and every n-tuple of elements y_0, \ldots, y_{n-1} from \mathfrak{B} , then

$$\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi[y_0/v_0, \dots, y_{n-1}/v_{n-1}] \Leftrightarrow \mathfrak{B} \models \varphi[y_0/v_0, \dots, y_{n-1}/v_{n-1}]$$

The Tarski-Vaught criterion yields when one substructure \mathfrak{B} is an elementary substructure of \mathfrak{A} .

LEMMA A.7 (TARSKI-VAUGHT CRITERION) $\mathfrak{B} < \mathfrak{A}$ iff for all formulae $\varphi(v_0, \ldots, v_n)$,

$$\forall b_1, \dots, b_n \in B(\exists a \in A \mathfrak{A} \models \varphi(a, b) \rightarrow \exists b \in B \mathfrak{B} \models \varphi(a, b)).$$

DEFINITION A.8 (SKOLEM FUNCTION) Let $\exists x \varphi(x, y_0, ..., y_n)$ be any formula in the language $\mathcal{L}_{\mathfrak{A}}$ appropriate for the structure \mathfrak{A} . Suppose there is a wellorder \triangleleft of the domain A. The skolem function h_{φ} for φ is the (partial) function:

 $h_{\varphi}(y_0,\ldots,y_n) \approx \text{ the } \triangleleft \text{-least } x \text{ such that } \varphi(x,y_0,\ldots,y_n).$

Notice that there are as many skolem functions as formulae in the language - which will be countable in the cases of interest to us. The following theorem will be used in applications.

THEOREM A.9 Löwenheim-Skolem Theorem Let \mathfrak{A} be any infinite structure for any language as above of cardinality ρ . Suppose $X \subseteq A$. Then there is a elementary substructure \mathfrak{B} of \mathfrak{A} , $\mathfrak{B} < \mathfrak{A}$, with $X \subseteq B \subseteq$ $A \land |B| = \max\{|X|, \rho\}.$

PROOF: The idea is to find the closure of *X* under the finitary skolem functions h_{φ} . Let *H* be the set of such functions. Then |H| we are told is ρ . Let $X_0 = X$, and let

$$X_{n+1} = \bigcup \{ h_{\varphi} ``X_n \mid h_{\varphi} \in H \}; \quad Y = \bigcup_{n < \omega} X_n.$$

The idea is that by closing up in this way we have ensured that the Tarski-Vaught criterion can be applied. However $|X_{n+1}| = \rho \otimes |X_n| = \rho \otimes |X_0|$. Hence $B = \bigcup_n X_n$ satisfies $|B| = \rho \otimes |X| = \max\{\rho, |X|\}$. Now if we take any $y_0, \ldots, y_n \in B$ we shall have that $y_0, \ldots, y_n \in X_m$ for some $m < \omega$. But then if $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi(z, \vec{y})$ then $\exists x \in X_{m+1} (\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi(x, \vec{y}))$. Q.E.D.

2271 COROLLARY A.10 Any infinite structure \mathfrak{A} has a countable substructure $\mathfrak{B} < \mathfrak{A}$.

A.3 A GENERALISED RECURSION THEOREM

DEFINITION A.11 If (A, R) is a partial order, we let $A_x =_{df} \{y \mid y \in A \land yRx\}$. We sometimes write $A_x = \text{pred}_{(A,R)}(x)$ if we wish to be clear about which order on A is concerned.

 A_x is thus the set of *R*-predecessors of *x* that are in *A*.

2272

DEFINITION A.12 If $\langle A, R \rangle$ is a wellfounded relation, R is said to be is set-like on A, if for every $x \in A$, $A_x =_{df} \operatorname{pred}_{(A,R)}(x) =_{df} \{y \mid y \in A \land yRx\}$ is a set. One can prove a recursion theorem for wellfounded relations, but observe that such relations are not necessarily transitive orderings. We remedy this by defining R^* - the *transitive closure or transitivisation* of R in A, where for $x, y \in A$ we want to put

$$xR^*y \leftrightarrow_{\mathrm{df}} xRy \lor \exists n > 0 \exists z_1 \in A, \dots, z_n \in A(xRz_1Rz_2\cdots Rz_nRy).$$

This is a somewhat informal definition, but the intention is clear: xR^*y if there is a finite *R*-path using elements from *A* from *x* to *y*.

DEFINITION A.13 $\langle A, R \rangle$ be a relation. For $x \in A$ we define $\bigcup_R x =_{df} \bigcup_{z \in x} A_z$. We let $\bigcup_R^0 x = A_x; \bigcup_R^{n+1} x = \bigcup \{A_z \mid z \in \bigcup_R^n x\}$. For $x, y \in A$ we set yR^*x iff $y \in \bigcup \{\bigcup_R^n x \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$. R^* is called the ancestral or transitive closure of R. The reader should check that $a : \bigcup_{n=1}^{n+1} x = \{x \in A \mid \exists z \in A, \dots \exists z \in A(yRz, Rz, \dots Rz, Rz)\}$ and b)

The reader should check that a) $\bigcup_{R}^{n+1} x = \{y \in A \mid \exists z_0 \in A \dots \exists z_n \in A(yRz_0Rz_1\dots Rz_nRx)\}$, and b) with *R* as the \in -relation itself $y \in x \leftrightarrow y \in TC(x)$.

LEMMA A.14 Let $\langle A, R \rangle$ be a relation. Then: (i) R^* is transitive on A. If $x \in A$ then R^* is transitive on $A_x \cup \{x\}$. (ii) If R is set-like, then so is R^* .

Proof: (i) is obvious. (ii) We first note that $\bigcup_R z$ is a set; this is because z is a set and R is set-like on *A* which implies that A_x is a set for each $x \in z$, and the Axiom of Unions allows us to conclude that $\bigcup_{x \in z} A_x \in V$. Hence by induction, so is each $\bigcup_R^{n+1} z$, and then another application of Replacement and Union ensures that $\bigcup \{\bigcup_R^n \{x\} | n \in \mathbb{N}\} \in V$; but this latter set is then the set of R^* predecessors of x. Q.E.D.

THEOREM A.15 (Transfinite Induction on Wellfounded Relations). Suppose (A, R) is a wellfounded relation, with R set-like on A. Let $t \subseteq A$ be non-empty class term. Then there is $u \in t$ which is R-minimal amongst all elements of t.

Proof: Let $A_x^* =_{df} \operatorname{pred}_{(A,R^*)}(x)$ be the set of R^* -predecessors of x. Note this is a set and is a subset of A. Let x be any element of t, and let u be an R-minimal member of the set $(t \cap A_x^*) \cap \{x\}$. Q.E.D.

One should note that we do need to prove the above theorem, since the definition of $\langle A, R \rangle$ being wellfounded (Def. 1.14) entails only that every non-empty set $z \subseteq A$ has an *R*-minimal element. The theorem then says that this holds for classes *t* too.

2302 THEOREM A.16 (Generalized Transfinite Recursion Theorem)

Suppose (A, R) is a wellfounded relation, with *R* set-like on *A*. If $G : V \times V \rightarrow V$ then there is a unique function $F : A \rightarrow V$ satisfying:

$$\forall xF(x) = G(x,F \upharpoonright A_x).$$

Proof: We shall define *G* as a union of *approximations* where $u \in V$ is an approximation if (a) Fun(u); (b) dom $(u) \subseteq A$ is *R*-transitive - meaning $y \in dom(u) \rightarrow A_y^* \subseteq dom(u)$; and (c) $\forall y \in dom(u)u(y) = G(y, u \upharpoonright A_y)$. We call an approximation *u* an *x*-approximation if $x \in dom(u)$. So *u* satisfies the defining clauses for *F* throughout its domain. Notice that if *u* is an *x*-approximation, then *v* is also an *x* approximation, where $v = u \upharpoonright \{x\} \cup A_x^*$. (It is the smallest part of *u* which is still an *x*-approximation.) (1) If *u* and *v* are approximations, and we set $t = dom(u) \cap dom(v)$ then $u \upharpoonright t = v \upharpoonright t$ and is an approximation

2309 approximation.

2310

Proof: Note that for any $y \in t$, $A_y^* \subseteq t$ so t is R-transitive. Let $Z = \{y \in t \mid u(y) \neq v(y)\}$.

If $Z \neq \emptyset$ let *w* be an *R*-minimal element of *Z* (by the wellfoundedness of *R*). Then $u \upharpoonright A_w = v \upharpoonright A_w$, hence:

$$u(w) = G(w, u \upharpoonright A_w) = G(w, v \upharpoonright A_w) = v(w).$$

This contradicts the choice of *w*. So $Z = \emptyset$ and *u*, *v* agree on *t*, the common part of their domains. This finishes (1). Exactly the same argument establishes:

(2) (Uniqueness) If F, F_0 are two functions satisfying the theorem then $F = F_0$.

2314 (3) (Existence) Such an F exists.

Proof: Let $u \in B \Leftrightarrow \{u \mid u \text{ is an approximation}\}$. *B* is in general a proper class of approximations, but this does not matter as long as we are careful. As any two such approximations agree on the common part of their domain, we may define $F = \bigcup B$ and obtain:

2318 (i) *F* is a function ;

2319 (ii) dom(F) = A.

Proof (ii): Let *C* be the class of sets $z \in A$ for which there is no *z*-approximation. So if we suppose for a contradiction that *C* is non-empty, by Theorem A.15, then it will have an *R*-minimal element *z* such that $\forall y \in A_z \exists u(u \text{ is a } y\text{-approximation})$. But now we let *f* be the function:

 $\bigcup \{ f^{y} \mid y \in A_{z} \land f^{y} \text{ is a } y \text{-approximation } \land dom(f^{y}) = \{ y \} \cup A_{y}^{*} \}.$

By (1) for a given y such an f^y is unique, and moreover the f^y all agree on the parts of their domains they have in common. Note that the domain of f is *R*-transitive, being the union of *R*-transitive sets dom (f^y) for $y \in z$. Hence $A_z^* \subseteq \text{dom}(f)$ and thus $\{z\} \cup \text{dom}(f)$ is also *R*-transitive. We can extend f to

$$f^{z} = f \cup \{ \langle z, G(f \upharpoonright A_{z}) \rangle \}$$

and f^z is then a *z*-approximation. However we assumed that $z \in C$, contradiction! Hence $C = \emptyset$ and (ii) holds. Q.E.D.

2322

For some applications it is useful to note that the AxPower was not used in the proof of this theorem, and it can be proved in ZF⁻. For $\langle A, R \rangle$ a wellfounded relation, we can define a *rank function* $\rho_{\langle A, R \rangle} : A \rightarrow \text{On by appealing to the last theorem: } \rho_{\langle A, R \rangle}(x) = \sup\{\rho_{\langle A, R \rangle}(y) + 1 \mid y \in A \land yRx\}$. Clearly this satisfies $xRy \rightarrow \rho_{\langle A, R \rangle}(x) < \rho_{\langle A, R \rangle}(y)$, and $\rho_{\langle A, R \rangle}(x)$ is onto On if *A* is a proper class, or an initial segment of On, *i.e.* an ordinal, if $A \in V$.

EXERCISE A.2 If (A, R) a wellfounded set-like relation, $x \in A$, and $\rho_{(A,R)}(x) = \alpha$, show that $\forall \beta < \alpha \exists y (y \in A \land y R^* x \land \rho_{(A,R)}(y) = \beta)$.

- EXERCISE A.3 If (A, R) a wellfounded set-like relation, show that $\rho_{(A,R)}$ is (1-1) if and only if R^* is a total order.
- EXERCISE A.4 (i) If $\langle A, R \rangle$ a wellfounded set-like relation, and $B \subseteq A$, show that $\rho_{\langle B, R \rangle}(x) \leq \rho_{\langle A, R \rangle}(x)$ for any $x \in B$. Show that additionally equality holds if $A_x^* \subseteq B$ where A_x^* is as in the proof of Theorem A.15 above.
- (ii) If $\langle A, R \rangle, \langle A, S \rangle$ are wellfounded set-like relations, and $S \subseteq R$, show that $\rho_{\langle A, S \rangle}(x) \leq \rho_{\langle A, R \rangle}(x)$ for any $x \in A$.

Bibliography

- [1] K. Devlin. *Constructibility*. Perspectives in Mathematical Logic. Springer Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg,
 1984. 36, 66
- [2] F.R. Drake. Set Theory: An introduction to large cardinals, volume 76 of Studies in Logic and the
 Foundations of Mathematics. North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1974. 36
- [3] T. Jech. Set Theory. Springer Monographs in Mathematics. Springer, Berlin, New York, 3 edition,
 2003. 36
- [4] K.Kunen. Set Theory: an introduction to independence proofs. Studies in Logic. North-Holland,
 Amsterdam, 1994. 3, 70

BIBLIOGRAPHY

INDEX OF SYMBOLS

 $\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{L}_{\dot{e}}, \mathcal{L}_{\vec{A}}, 4$ 2345 ė,≐,4 2346 FVbl, 4 2347 $\phi(y/x), 4$ 2348 $\{x \mid \phi\}, 5$ 2349 V, 5 2350 Ø, 5 2351 ⊆,5 2352 ∪, ∩, 5 2353 $\neg s, 5$ 2354 *s**t*, 5 2355 U, 5 2356 ∩, 5 2357 $\{t_1,\ldots,t_n\}, 6$ 2358 $\langle x, y \rangle, 6$ 2359 $\langle x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n \rangle, 6$ 2360 $x \times z, 6$ 2361 $\mathcal{P}, 6$ 2362 $\operatorname{dom}(r), \operatorname{ran}(r), \operatorname{field}(r), 6$ 2363 r"u, 6 2364 $r^{-1}, 6$ 2365 $r \circ s, 6$ 2366 Fun, 7 2367 $f: a \longrightarrow b, f: a \longrightarrow_{(1-1)} b, 7$ 2368 $f: a \longrightarrow_{\text{onto}} b, f: a \longleftrightarrow b, 7$ 2369 ^{*a*}*b*, 7 2370 $\prod f, 7$ 2371 ZF², 8 2372 Trans, 9 2373 TC, 10 2374 ρ , 10 2375

2344

 V_{α} , 10 2376 Δ_0 , 11 2377 Σ_n, Π_n, Π 2378 *M T*, 11 2379 $\varphi^W, t^W, 12$ 2380 <ⁿ, 15 2381 <*, 15 2382 $cf(\beta), 18$ 2383 Reg, Sing, Card, LimCard, 18 2384 $\exists_{\alpha}, 21$ 2385 $\sum_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha}$, 24 2386 $\prod_{\alpha < \tau} \kappa_{\alpha}$, 24 2387 H_{κ} , 27 2388 HF, H_{ω} , 28 2389 HC, H_{ω_1} , 29 2390 $\langle T, <_T \rangle$, 37 2391 $[\varphi], 45$ 2392 Fml, 46 2393 Fmla, 46 2394 *Q*_{*x*}, 46 2395 $\operatorname{Sat}(u, x), 47$ 2396 ⊨,47 2397 Def, 47 2398 Def₀, 48 2399 OD, 48 2400 「ZF[¬], 「ZFC[¬], 49 2401 $\operatorname{Con}(T)$, 50 2402 Con^T , 50 2403 $L_{\alpha}, L, 54$ 2404 $\rho_L(x)$, 54 2405 IM, 55 2406

 $<_{Q_x}$, 57 $<_{\alpha}$, $<_L$, 57 V = L, 57 2410 OD, 60 $<_{OD}$, 61 2412 HOD, 62 ZF^* , 63 $L_{\alpha}(A), L(A), 64$ $L_{\alpha}[A], L[A], 65$ 2416 L^n , 65

INDEX

2427	absolutely definite, a.d., 40
2428	absoluteness
2429	upward, downward, 31
2430	Aronszajn trees, 37
2431	assignment function, 46
2432	Axiom of Choice, 2
2433	Axiom of Choice
2434	in <i>L</i> , 56
2435	Axiom of Constructibility in <i>L</i> , 57
2436	beth function, 21
2437	Cantor, G, 1
2438	cardinal
2439	ineffable, 36, 37
2440	regular, 18
2441	strong limit, 35
2442	strongly Mahlo, 36
2443	subtle, 37
2444	sum, product, 24
2445	weakly compact , 36
2446	weakly inaccessible, strongly inaccessible,
2447	35
2448	weakly Mahlo, 36
2449	Cartesian product, 6
2450	closed and unbounded, c.u.b.
2451	filter, 22
2452	set, 19
2453	closed formula, 4
2454	closed term, 5
2455	cofinality, 18
2456	Cohen, P, 2

Collapsing Lemma 2457 General, 27 2458 Mostowski-Shepherdson, 26 2459 Condensation Lemma, 59 2460 conservative theory, 8 2461 consistency of AC, 58 2462 consistency of GCH, 59 2463 consistency of \neg SH, 66 2464 constructible hierarchy, L, 54 2465 constructible rank, $\rho_L(x)$, 54 2466 Continuum Hypothesis, CH, 1 2467 Correctness theorem, 49 2468 countable chain condition, c.c.c., 66 2469 cumulative hierarchy, V_{α} , 10 2470 deductive system, 72 2471 definability function Def, 47 2472 definite term and formula, 40 2473 diagonal intersection, 21 2474 diamond principle, \diamond , 67 2475 Fodor's Lemma, 23 2476 formula 2477 Δ_0 , 11 2478 of *L*, 4, 71 2479 relativisation of, φ^W , 12 2480 free variable, 4 2481 function 2482 (1-1), 72483 Fun, 7 2484 bijection, 7 2485 cofinal, 17 2486

INDEX

2487	normal, 20
2488	n-ary, 7
2489	onto, 7
2490	Gödel code sets, 45
2491	Gödel's Completeness Theorem, 74
2492	Gödel's Second Incompleteness Theorem, 50
2493	generalised cartesian product, 7
2494	Generalized Transfinite Recursion Theorem, 77
2495	global wellorder of L , $<_L$, 57
2496	hereditarily countable. HC. 29
2497	hereditarily finite. HF. 28
2498	hereditarily ordinal definable, HOD, 62
2499	hereditary cardinality, 27
2500	higher order constructibility, L^n , 65
2501	Hilbert, D, 1
2502	inner model, IM, 55
2503	König's Theorem, 24
2504	Levy hierarchy, 11
2505	logical connectives, 4
2506	logical validity, 73
2507	Löwenheim-Skolem Theorem, 75
2508	ordered <i>n</i> -tuple, 6
2509	ordered pair, 6
2510	ordinal definable, OD, 48, 60
2511	outright definable, 48
2512	power set operation, 6
2513	quantifier
2514	bounded, 11
2515	quantifier
2516	existential, 4
2517	first order, 4, 8
2518	second order, 8
2519	unicity, , 7

2520	rank function, ρ , 10
2521	Reflection Theorem, Montague-Levy, 33
2522	relation
2523	<i>n</i> -ary relation, 6
2524	extensional, 26
2525	relativised constructible hierarchies, $L(A)$, 64
2526	relativised constructible hierarchies, $L[A]$, 65
2527	Richard's Paradox, 60
2528	satisfaction relation, 47, 73
2529	scheme of ∈-induction, 9
2530	skolem function, 75
2531	soundness, 12
2532	stationary set, 22
2533	supertransitive, 64
2534	Suslin Hypothesis, 66
2535	Suslin tree, 66
2536	Tarski-Vaught criterion, 31, 75
2530	term
2538	class term. 5
2539	term
2540	relativisation of t^W , 13
2541	Transfinite Induction on Wellfounded
2542	Relations, 76
2543	transfinite recursion along \in , 9
2544	transitive
2545	∈-model, 11
2546	set, Trans, 9
2547	tree property, 37
	1 1 7.07
2548	Urelemente, 9
2549	ultrafilter, 22
2550	von Neumann-Gödel-Bernays, NBG, 8
2551	wellfounded relation, 10
2552	Zermelo-Fraenkel Axioms, 7
2553	Zermelo-Fraenkel Axioms
2554	not finitely-axiomatisability, 45